A. Z. TSISYK

THE LATIN LANGUAGE

Scientia est potentia
Knowledge is power

Minsk BSMU 2010
A. Z. Cisyk

LATIN LANGUAGE

THE LATIN LANGUAGE

Допущено Министерством образования Республики Беларусь в качестве учебного пособия для англоговорящих иностранных студентов высших медицинских учебных заведений

Минск БГМУ 2010
УДК 811.124 (811.111) (075.8)
ББК 81.2 (Лат) (81.2 Англ – 923)
Ц 73

Рецензенты: каф. классической филологии Белорусского государственного университета (зав. каф. канд. филол. наук, доц. Г. И. Шевченко); зав. каф. иностранных языков Гродненского государственного медицинского университета, канд. филол. наук, доц. Д. К. Кондратьев

Перевод на английский язык А. З. Цысика

Цысик, А. З.

Издание состоит из фонетического раздела и трех основных разделов материалов — анатомического, фармацевтического и клинического. Каждый из этих разделов содержит теоретическую и практическую части, латинско-английский и английско-латинский словарь. С эквивалентами на английском языке представлены профессиональные медицинские выражения, латинские афоризмы и текст международного студенческого гимна «Гаудеамус».

Предназначено для иностранных студентов лечебного, педиатрического и других факультетов медицинских вузов, изучающих дисциплину «Латинский язык» на английском языке.
PREFACE

This manual is meant for English-speaking students of medical universities of the Republic of Belarus. Its structure corresponds to the syllabus presented in the State Educational Standard Plan for the subject “The Latin Language” taught in the medical universities. The manual has been composed in accordance with generally accepted patterns expressed in well-known manuals and textbooks of Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology.

The manual is divided into four parts — phonetics, the anatomical part with the main grammar rules, the pharmaceutical part and the clinical one.

Every real lesson, as it is generally known, has a uniform structure: checking the home task (orally and in writing), some explanation of a new topic, students’ work with exercises. The manual contains all necessary components for this work — grammar and terminological material, as well as exercises. In the latter, words are given in alphabetical order, and every lesson is provided with Latin-English and English-Latin glossaries. Such a distribution of educational material should help students in their work with exercises.

According to high school norms of studying linguistic subjects, students are to learn 30–40 new words at every lesson, although this word memorizing can be managed naturally only due to a strainuous efforts to do the homework. But then, this work is constantly facilitated by lexical affinity of equivalent words in Latin and English.

The main attention is paid to the anatomical and clinical terms, as namely these terms are and will be mainly needed of all wanted in daily medical practice of foreign students. That is why the pharmaceutical part of the manual is presented quite concisely. As to clinical terms, on the basis of well-known English medical dictionaries we sought to give the scientific definition of each terminological unit. Such an introduction into professional terminology judging by the students’ reaction has always been of great interest to them.

The subject “Medical Latin” is mastered and controlled chiefly in written form. So both proper spelling and grammar arrangement are of great value as spoken Latin is very simple. That’s why control tests at every lesson as well as summing up are performed only in written form.

The students should bear in mind, that only systematic work on the topic and vocabulary of every lesson on their own can result in success.

The author expresses his sincere acknowledgement to the senior tutor of the Department of Foreign Languages of the Belarusian State Medical University Novitskaja Tatiana for her perpetual assistance in the work at the manual.
INTRODUCTION TO THE SUBJECT

The subject you are going to study is the Latin Language. To some point, this name is relative, because nowadays there are no people speaking Latin. From the school course of world history you can remember, that many centuries ago, where nowadays Italy is, there was the Roman Empire. The Roman state which included many lands and people existed till 464 A.D. And initially, Rome was a small town, founded by an Italian tribe in 753 B.C. and Latin was its native language. Gradually, century after century, Rome became the most powerful state of the Mediterranean and Latin was widespread and acknowledged.

An event of tremendous historical importance for both Rome and the future of European culture was the Roman conquest of Greece, the motherland of European culture and science. The Greek physician Hippocrates is namely considered to be the founder of European scientific medicine. Hippocrates and other Greek physicians made a great contribution into the development of medicine, that’s why Greek medicine was extremely popular and prestigious among the population of the Mediterranean area. For this reason, Greek medical terms were borrowed into Latin and came into use in different countries. So originally the European medical terminology was formed on the basis of Greek and Latin words.

In the new history of Europe, beginning with the Roman state’s collapse, the Latin language was used for 1000 years as the language of state establishments, Catholic religion, education and science, especially at universities founded in the 12th century. Every university would have a medical faculty. Diplomas and theses as well as the process of education itself were in Latin. As to medicine, Latin became the international professional language of physicians. Medical terms rooting from Latin and Greek are presented in any European language as borrowings. What’s more, there exist lists of biological and medical terms, forming the so-called Nomenclatures, approved at the International Congresses of scientists — anatomical, histological, microbiological etc. Latin terms of those nomenclatures are used in education and scientific literature. That’s why future doctors must study fundamentals of international medical terminology, based on Latin grammar and Latin and Greek word building elements (roots, stems and affixes).

Among modern European languages English, and, particularly, medical English, contains a great number of Latin and latinized Greek words. It becomes evident when comparing medical glossaries of Latin and English. To prove this compare some medical terms in Latin and English.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin anatomical terms</th>
<th>English equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abdomen</td>
<td>abdomen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alaris</td>
<td>alar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>canalis</td>
<td>canal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cardiacus</td>
<td>cardiac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cavitas</td>
<td>cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lobeus</td>
<td>lobe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>longus</td>
<td>long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tonsilla</td>
<td>tonsil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vomer</td>
<td>vomer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin pharmaceutical terms</th>
<th>English equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acidum</td>
<td>acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acidum aceticum</td>
<td>acetic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aether</td>
<td>ether</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cortex</td>
<td>cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dilutus</td>
<td>diluted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>herba</td>
<td>herb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mentha</td>
<td>mint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pilula</td>
<td>pill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tinctura</td>
<td>tincture</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin clinical terms</th>
<th>English equivalents</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adenitis</td>
<td>adenitis</td>
<td>inflammation of gland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bradyphagia</td>
<td>bradyphagia</td>
<td>slowing of swallowing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancerophobia</td>
<td>cancerophobia</td>
<td>fear of cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cholecystogramma</td>
<td>cholecystogram</td>
<td>results of gallbladder X-ray examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haematuria</td>
<td>hematuria</td>
<td>blood in the urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lipuria</td>
<td>lipuria</td>
<td>lipid excretion by urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>otogenus</td>
<td>otogenic</td>
<td>developing from the ear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tachycardia</td>
<td>tachycardia</td>
<td>abnormally fast heart rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trichaliga</td>
<td>trichaliga</td>
<td>feeling of pain in the hair</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As we see, in clinical terminology using Latin terms is particularly preferable, because one Latin word can change the whole group of English words, expressing some pathological phenomenon.

The proximity of medical terms in Latin and English can be explained very simply: it is well known, that English medical terminology developed from Medieval Latin terminology, which had absorbed ancient Latin and Greek medical lexical units. Both Latin and ancient Greek are an inexhaustible source for a new term building, and this process keeps on going. Everybody striving to become a doctor must master Latin and fundamentals of international medical Terminology.

The course of Latin at the Medical University you are going to study consists of 3 main parts, which correspond to the main groups of medical
terminology: anatomical (and partly histological), pharmaceutical and clinical ones. This material is divided into 2 academic terms (semesters); each lesson is once a week. The first term is devoted to learning phonetic and main grammar rules of Latin anatomical terminology. During the second term the students get acquainted with the fundamentals of pharmaceutical and clinical terminology. Each new lesson includes your teacher’s explanation of the topic of the lesson, but the main bulk of work for you is your home task. A specific feature of studying during both terms is written control of checking home task preparation at every lesson. Besides this regular test control, 3 written tests (for 45 and 90 minutes) are provided. The purpose of the first one is to control the knowledge of about 50% of the course material, and that of the second one — mastering the entire material of each part of the course. There exist uniform (for all groups and teachers) rules of the control assessment and you will be acquainted with them. So, at every lesson, you will first work orally, checking the home task with your teacher, and then your knowledge will be controlled in written form (while books and notebooks are closed). The principal way to this knowledge is your own persistent work with your textbook memorizing Latin words and rules of its grammar. And, without doubt, every student can succeed in learning Latin and fundamentals of medical terminology, if his or her efforts are steady and diligent.
# Part I

## PHONETIC RULES OF PRONUNCIATION

### Lesson 1

**THE LATIN Alphabet. The Pronunciation of Vowels, Consonants and Letter Combinations**

### § 1. LATIN Alphabet

The Latin alphabet includes 25 letters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letters</th>
<th>Names</th>
<th>Latin Pronunciation</th>
<th>Latin examples and their transcription</th>
<th>English equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A a</td>
<td>a [Λ]</td>
<td>[a]</td>
<td>vas [vΛs]</td>
<td>vessel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B b</td>
<td>be [be]</td>
<td>[b]</td>
<td>bulbus [bǔ:lbūs]</td>
<td>bulb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C c</td>
<td>tse [tse]</td>
<td>[ts]</td>
<td>coccyx [kó:ktsiks]</td>
<td>coccyx, coccygeal bone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D d</td>
<td>de [de]</td>
<td>[d]</td>
<td>dens [dens]</td>
<td>tooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E e</td>
<td>e [e]</td>
<td>[e]</td>
<td>vertebra [vé:rtebra]</td>
<td>vertebra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F f</td>
<td>ef [ef]</td>
<td>[f]</td>
<td>frontalis [frontali:s]</td>
<td>frontal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G g</td>
<td>ge [ge]</td>
<td>[g]</td>
<td>genu [gē:nu]</td>
<td>knee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H h</td>
<td>ha [hΛ]</td>
<td>[h]</td>
<td>hepar [hē:pΛr]</td>
<td>liver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I i</td>
<td>i [i]</td>
<td>[i]</td>
<td>incisura [inciz:ru]</td>
<td>incisure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j j</td>
<td>yot [yot]</td>
<td>[j]</td>
<td>jugularis [jugulāris]</td>
<td>jugular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K k</td>
<td>ka [kΛ]</td>
<td>[k]</td>
<td>skeleton [skē:leton]</td>
<td>skeleton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L l</td>
<td>el [el]</td>
<td>[l]</td>
<td>cellula [tsē:llulΛ]</td>
<td>cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M m</td>
<td>em [em]</td>
<td>[m]</td>
<td>mors [mors]</td>
<td>death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N n</td>
<td>en [en]</td>
<td>[n]</td>
<td>nodus [nō:dus]</td>
<td>node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O o</td>
<td>o [o]</td>
<td>[o]</td>
<td>coronary [coronārius]</td>
<td>coronary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P p</td>
<td>pe [pe]</td>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>palpebra [pālpebra]</td>
<td>eyelid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q q</td>
<td>ku [ku]</td>
<td>[kv]</td>
<td>Quercus [kvē:rkus]</td>
<td>oak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>quartus [kvā:rtus]</td>
<td>fourth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R r</td>
<td>er [er]</td>
<td>[r]</td>
<td>renalis [renal:is]</td>
<td>renal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S s</td>
<td>es [es]</td>
<td>[s]</td>
<td>sinus [si:nus]</td>
<td>sinus, hollow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[z]</td>
<td>incisura [intsiz:ru]</td>
<td>incisure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T t</td>
<td>te [te]</td>
<td>[t]</td>
<td>tibia [tī:bΛ]</td>
<td>tibia, shine-bone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[ts]</td>
<td>articulatio [artikula:tsio]</td>
<td>articulation, joint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U u</td>
<td>u [u]</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>succus [sū:kkus]</td>
<td>juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X x</td>
<td>iks [iks]</td>
<td>ks</td>
<td>dexter [dē:kster]</td>
<td>right, right-hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y y</td>
<td>ipsilon</td>
<td>[ipsilon]</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>gyrus [gi:rus]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z z</td>
<td>zeta</td>
<td>[zētΛ]</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>zygomaticus [zigomātikus]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The last two letters, borrowed by Romans from Greek alphabet, are used, as a rule, in the words of Greek origin.

§ 2. DIVISION OF LATIN SOUNDS

Six letters of the alphabet (a, e, i, o, u, y) correspond to vowels and nineteen (b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z) denote consonants.

§ 3. PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS

Vowels in Latin, except “y”, sound practically the same, as the sounds of their names in the alphabet (see above). So, the letter “a” sounds [a], the letter e — sounds [e] and so on. One may add, that the stressed vowel corresponds in pronunciation to a long one in English, compare:

cavitas [káːvɪtəs] — cavity
apertura [əpɜːrˈtʊrə] — aperture, opening
venosus [vəˈnɔːzəs] — venous
tonsilla [tɒnˈsɪlə] — tonsil

The letter “y” (ipsilon) sounds as the Latin letter “i” (that’s why the Frenchmen call y “igrek”, i. e. “the Greek “i”):
tympanum [tɪːmˈpænəm] — drum

All the above given examples also indicate, that Latin vowels don’t practically change their sound quality in different syllables. But the vowel “i” placed before the vowels “a”, “e”, “o”, “u” when making a common syllable with them, changes its sound characteristics: now it sounds similar to the English vowel “y” in the yard, yours, yourself, youthful, let’s compare:

maialis [mʌjəˈlɪs] — referring to May
ieiunum [jeɪˈjʊnəm] — jejenum
major [məˈdʒɔr] — greater

As in such cases the letter “i” sounds different compared to the vowel “i”, the scientists in the XVI century decided to introduce a new letter j into the Latin alphabet, so as to substitute the vowel “i”: majalis, jejunum, major and so on. It is common to use the letter “j” in medical and biological terms. Let’s, however, note that in the terms of the Greek origin the vowel “i” never makes a syllable with the subsequent vowels “a”, “e”, “o”, “u” and therefore the letter j cannot be used:

iatr [iəˈtrə] physician, commonly geriatr, paediatr, psychiatr, phthisiatr and so on — these terms will be discussed in the clinical part of our course. We can also mention the noun Iodum [iˈɔːdəm] — iodine (Latin names of chemical elements are to be written with capital letters).

§ 4. PRONUNCIATION OF TWO VOWEL COMBINATION

Two vowels following each other can form the so-called diphthong that is pronounced as a combination of two vowels pronounced in one syllable.
So **au** [au] is pronounced as in the English words *down, sound, south, compound* and so on:


**Eu** [eu] has no analogue in English, so its pronunciation must be learnt by the spelling memorizing. However, you should pay attention to the letter combination “eu” at the end of words, where it doesn’t make a diphthong and each vowel is pronounced separately:

- sigmoideus [sigmo:i:deus] — sigmoid
- corpus luteum [kó:rpus lú:teum] — corpus luteum (yellow body)
- Two vowels can also form a digraph, which sounds like the Latin vowel “e”:
  - ae — [e] — costae [kó:ste] — ribs
  - oe — [e] — oedema [edé:mʌ] — swelling
- If each vowel in such digraphs is to be pronounced separately, two dots are placed over the letter e:
  - aër [a:er] — air, Aloë (names of medical plants are to be written in Latin with the capital letter) [a:loe] — aloe.

### § 5. Pronunciation of Consonants

Consonants **b, d, f, h k, m, n, p, q, s, t, v, x** are similar in pronouncing to English. The difference is that consonants **p, t, k** are not aspirated, as in English. Pronunciation of the rest consonants is to be explained.

The letter **Cc** before the vowels “e”, “i”, “y” and digraphs **ae, oe** is pronounced as [ts], but before the vowels “a”, “o”, “u” and consonants (except **h**) is pronounced as [k]:

- cervicalis [tserviká:lis] — cervical
- caecum [tsé:kum] — caecum
- coccyx [kó:ktsiks] — coccyx, cockerel bone
- The letter **Gg** is always pronounced like [g] in English *get, glass, disguise*:
  - gaster [gâ:ster] — stomach
- genu [gê:nu] — knee
- vagina [vʌgì:nʌ] — vagina
- The letter **Hh** is pronounced approximately as h in English:
  - homo [hó:mo] — man
- hyoideus [hioi:deus] — sublingual
- The letter **Ll** is pronounced in someway softer than in English and is palatalized both before vowels and consonants (as in the pronunciation of such English words as **look** and **live**):
  - albus [á:lbus] — white
  - cellula [tsé:llulʌ] — cell
  - palatinus [pʌlAtínus] — palatine
  - pyloricus [piló:rikus] — pyloric
The letter **Rr** in Latin is pronounced always clearly and distinctly not as the English **Rr** [a:]

dexter [dé:xter] — right
posterior [posté:rior] — back
renalis [rená:lis] — renal

The letter **Ss** between two vowels is pronounced like [z], in other cases — as [s]:
basis [bá:zis] — base
sinus [sí:nus] — sinus, hollow

The letter **Tt** is commonly pronounced as [t] without aspiration: tinctura [tinktú:rΛ] — tincture. But in such a letter combination, where **i** follows **t** plus some other vowel, **t** is pronounced as [ts]:
articulatio [artikulá:tsio] — joint
protuberantia [protuberá:ntsia] — protuberance

There is, however, an exception from this last rule: if before the combination **ti** + vowel the consonants “s” or “х” are placed, then the pronunciation of **ti** is [ti]:
digestio [digé:stio] — digestion

The letter **Zz** is pronounced as [z]:
zona [zó:nΛ] — zone
horizontalis [horizontá:lis] — horizontal
But in two cases we pronounce this letter as [ts]: influenza [influé:ntsΛ] — grippus, influenza and Zincum [tsí:nkum] — zink.

### § 6. Pronunciation of Consonant Combinations

Two consonants can form a digraph, which is pronounced as a consonant: **ch** is pronounced as [kh]:
chorda [khó:rdΛ] — cord
charta [khá:rtΛ] — paper

**ph** is pronounced as [f]:
lymphaticus [limfá:ticus] — lymphatic
pharynx [fa:rinks] — pharynx

**rh** is pronounced as [r]:
rhinorrhagia [rinorag:i:a] — rhinorrhagia (nasal bleeding)
rhomboideus [romboideo:deus] — rhomboid

**th** is pronounced as [t]:
thorax [tó:raks] — chest
labyrinthus [láibirí:ntsus] — labyrinth

The combination of three consonants **sch** is pronounced as [skh]:
schema [skhé:mΛ] — scheme
ischiatricus [iskhiá:dikus] — sciatic
**§ 7. PRONUNCIATION OF SOME LETTER COMBINATIONS**

The letter combination *ngu* is pronounced as [ngv], if the vowel *u* is followed by one of the vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, *u*:

- *lingua* [lɪ:ŋgvΛ] — tongue, language
- *unguentum* [ungvɛːntum] — ointment
- *unguis* [ʊŋvɪs] — nail

But if a consonant follows “*u*”, then *ngu* is pronounced as [ngu]:

- *angulus* [ɑːŋgulus] — angle
- *lingula* [lɪːŋgula] — lingula, little tongue

The letter combination *qu* with the following vowel (*a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*) is pronounced as [kv] with a subsequent vowel:

- *squamosus* [skvamɔːzus] — squamosal
- *aqueductus* [akvedутus] — aqueduct
- *Quercus* [kvɛːrkus] — oak

**§ 8. EXERCISES**

1. Read the following words paying special attention to the vowel pronunciation:
   
   - forámen (opening), ligaméntum (ligament), dúctus (duct), interglobuláris (intergobular), longitudinalis (longitudinal), massetérius (masticatory, chewing), pylóricus (pyloric), synoviális (synovial), tympánicus (tympanic), sinistér (left), zygomátics (zygomatic)

2. Read the following words paying special attention to the pronunciation of the letter *c*:
   
   - cáput (head), cervicális (cervical), cérebrum (brain), cútis (skin), Ácidum acéticum (acetic acid), síccus (dry), fácies (face, surface), coccygéus (coccygeal), coerúculeus (blue), cáécum (caecum), búccae (cheeks), carcinómá (cancer), sácucus lacrimális (lacrimal sac)

3. Read the following words paying special attention to the pronunciation of the letters *g* and *q*:
   
   - nérvus hypoglóssus (hypoglossal nerve), gánglion pterygopalátinum (pterygopalatine ganglion), rámí gingíváles (gingival branches), gánglion genículátum (geniculate ganglion), gýrus angúláris (angular gyrus), húmór aquósus (aqueous humor), aquédúctus vestibúli (vestibular aqueduct), cósta quínta (fifth rib), márgo squamósus (squamosal border)

4. Read correctly the following words, paying special attention to the consonants *j*, *s* and *t*:
   
   - álá májor (major wing), flexúra duodenójejúnális (duodenoejunal flexure), júga alveórária (alveolar yokes), articulátio compósita (complex joint), óstium atrioventriculáre déxtrum (right atrioventricular orifice), incisúra juguláris (jugular notch), segmentum básale antéríus (anterior basal segment), básis óssis sácri (base of sacrum), mixtio pro potióne (mixture for drinking).
5. Read correctly the following words paying attention to combinations of vowels:

cóstae spúriae (false ribs), forámen caécum línguae (caecum foramen of tongue), Óleum Eucalýpti (eucalyptus oil), oedéma laryngis (edema of larynx), nérvus aurículáris (auricular nerve), aponeurósis línguae (lingual aponeurosis), célulae haematopóética (hematogenic cells), glândulae oesophágaeae (oesophageal glands), pneumonia migrans (migratory pneumonia).

6. Read attentively the following words with vowel and consonant combinations:

nérvus ischiádicus (sciatic nerve), Strophanthínium (strophanthin), Synthomycínium ( synthomycin), fébris haemorrhágica (hemorrhagic fever), ráphe pharyngis (pharyngeal raphe), ásthma bronchiále (bronchial asthma), vértebrae thorácicae (thoracic vertebrae), unguéntum ophthálmicum (ophthalmic ointment), labyrinthus ethmoidális (ethmoidal labyrinth), Methylénum coerúleum (blue methylen), rhizóma Glycyrrhízae (rhizome of licorice), Schizándra chinénsis (chinense magnolia vine), sectiones hypothálami (sections of hypothalamus), dúctus chólédóchus (common bile duct), trúncus brachiocephálus (brachiocephalis trunk), distántia trochantérica (trochanteric distance), hemisphérium cerebéli (hemisphere of cerebellum), tubérculum pharyngéum (pharyngeal tubercle), véna saphéna (saphenous vein), cirrhósis hépatis (biliary cirrhosis), typhus abdominális (abdominal typhus), nephrolithíasis crónica (chronic nephrolithiasis), foétor ex óre seu halitósis (fetid or offensive breath or halitosis)

Lesson 2

ACCENT RULES

§ 9. ACCENT IN THE WORDS CONSISTING OF TWO SYLLABLES

If a word consists of two syllable, there is always only one stress: the first syllable is stressed:

cós-ta, lá-rynx, nér-vus

§ 10. ACCENT IN POLYSYLLABIC WORDS. LENGTH AND BREVITY OF THE SECOND END SYLLABLE

In polysyllabic words consisting of three and more syllables, the second or third syllables from the end of the word can be stressed. The stress depends on the length or brevity of the second word end syllable: if it is long, it is stressed, if it is short, it cannot be stressed and then the third word end syllable is stressed.

The length and brevity of the second syllable and particularly in textbooks are usually marked by special signs: a short line is placed over the vowel if it is long, and a little arch — if it is short, compare:

So, if we find such words as forāmen, incisūra, hepatītis etc. in the dictionary, we can instantly determine, that such words have an accent on the second syllable from the end.

If in the dictionary we see such words as lamīna, encephālon, thoracīcus etc., we understand that the third syllable from the end must be stressed: lámina, encéphalon, thorácticus.

Now, we should ask a crucial question: do we have to consult the dictionary about the quality of the second end syllable in every case or not? Fortunately, there exist some rules helping us to determine at once the length or brevity of the second end syllable, or more simply, of the second end vowel. First of all, there are suffixes containing vowels which are long or short by nature. Such suffixes called accordingly “long” or “short” can give us guidance about the length or brevity of the second end vowel.

§ 11. LONG SUFFIXES

Before listing the suffixes, one must notice that part of these suffixes is always long or short in all kinds of terminology — anatomical, pharmaceutical, clinical. As we are going to begin with anatomical terminology and continue studying it during the first semester, it would be proper to begin with the suffixes in anatomical terms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffixes</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>English equivalents</th>
<th>Exceptions and their translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-āl-</td>
<td>dentālis</td>
<td>dental</td>
<td>encephālon (brain)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>horizontālis</td>
<td>horizontal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ār-</td>
<td>articulāris</td>
<td>auricular</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mandibulāris</td>
<td>mandibular</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-āt-</td>
<td>caudātus</td>
<td>caudate</td>
<td>prostāta (prostate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>meātus</td>
<td>passage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-īn-</td>
<td>palatīnus</td>
<td>palatine</td>
<td>lamīna (lamine), fēmīna (women),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vagīna</td>
<td>vagina, sheath</td>
<td>retina (retina), dens serotīnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(wisdom tooth), nervus trigemīnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(trigeminal nerve), termīnus (term)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-īv-</td>
<td>gingīva</td>
<td>gingiva, gum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dens incisīvus</td>
<td>incisor tooth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ōs-</td>
<td>aponeurōsis</td>
<td>aponeurosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>petrōsus</td>
<td>stony</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūr-</td>
<td>incisūra</td>
<td>incisure, slit or notch</td>
<td>suture, line of junction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 12. SHORT SUFFIXES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffixes</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>English equivalents</th>
<th>Exceptions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-iāc-</td>
<td>cardiācus</td>
<td>cardiac</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>coelīacus</td>
<td>coeliac</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-īc-</td>
<td>gastrīcus</td>
<td>gastric</td>
<td>vesīca (bladder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tunīca</td>
<td>tunic, coat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### § 13. SUFFIXES WITH SIMILAR QUALITY OF VOWEL IN ALL PARTS OF MEDICAL TERMINOLOGY

As mentioned above, some suffixes can always be long or short in all parts of medical terminology, compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suffix</th>
<th>Anatomical terms</th>
<th>Pharmaceutical terms</th>
<th>Clinical terms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ēt-</td>
<td>muscŭlus levātor (levator muscle)</td>
<td>Aqua destillāta (distilled water)</td>
<td>Caries exacerbātā (caries exacerbated)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ōs-</td>
<td>aponeurōsis (aponeurosis)</td>
<td>spirituōsus (spirituous)</td>
<td>erythrocytōsis (erythrocytosis, increased account of red blood cells in the blood)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūr-</td>
<td>junctūra (juncture, junction)</td>
<td>tinctūra (tincture)</td>
<td>fractūra (fracture)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ūl-</td>
<td>angũlus (angle)</td>
<td>Betũla (birch)</td>
<td>furuncũlus (furuncle, boil)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### § 14. THE WAY OF ACCENT DETERMINATION WHEN THE SECOND END VOWEL IS NOT A PART OF A LONG OR A SHORT SUFFIX

In many words the second vowel from the word end is placed before a consonant, but this vowel is not a part of a common long or short suffix. In such cases we can determine its length or brevity controlling those peculiarities of the given word in the textbook vocabulary, compare:

forāmen (opening), orbĭta (eye socket), skelĕton (skeleton), suprēmus (highest), tuberosītās (tuberosity), urēter (ureter) and so on.

### § 15. SOME RULES OF SYLLABLE LENGTH DETERMINATION

In some cases we can determine the syllable length or brevity with the help of certain rules.

1. The syllable is long, when its vowel is placed before two or more consonants:
   - ligame ŏntum (ligament)
   - maxiũlla (maxilla, upper jaw)
   - siniũster (left)

   But, when the vowel is short by nature (it is shown in the dictionary) and it is placed before two consonants, first of which being b, c, d, g, p, t and the second is l or r, this short vowel is pronounced short:

   - vertēbra (vertebra), cerēbrum (cerebrum), os triquētrum (triquetrum bone), multiplex (multiple). And when this vowel is long by nature, our rule is valid:
     - cicātrix (cicatrix, scar), psychiātri (psychiatrists), salūbris (curative).
2. The syllable is long, when it includes the diphthongs au, eu or ae, oe: amoeba (ameba), diaeta (diet), Althaea (althea).

3. The syllable is long when its vowel is placed before the consonants x or z:
   refluxus (reflex), Oryza (rise).

§ 16. THE RULES OF SYLLABLE BREVITY

1. The syllable is short when its vowel is placed before another vowel:
   linēa (line), superior (higher, upper)
   cornūa (horns), Aluminīum (aluminium)
There are, however, two points of exceptions from this rule:
1) in some words of Greek origin the last but one vowel was formed from
   the diphthong ae, that’s why it keeps the length of the syllable:
   coccygaeus → coccygēus
   peritonaeeum → peritonēum
   You have to memorize these exceptions:
   perinēum (perineum, fork) peritonēum (peritoneum), trachēa (trachea),
   anconēus (anconeus muscle), coccygēus (cocygeal), esophagēus (esophageal),
   glutēus (gluteal), laryngēus (laryngeal), meningēus (meningeal), peronēus
   (peroneal, fibular), pharyngēus (pharyngeal).
2) in clinical terms with the ending -ia their vowel i and the syllable with it
   are stressed:
   dyskinesia (dyskinesia, disturbance of movement), otoscopia (otoscopy,
   internal examination of the ear).
   Some peculiarities of this exception will be discussed in the clinical part of
   our course.

2. The syllable is short when its vowel is placed before the digraphs ch, ph, rh, th:
   ductus choledŏchus (bile duct)
   nephrolithus (renal calculus)

§ 17. EXERCISES

1. Determine the stress syllable paying attention to the long and short
   suffixes:
   incisūra ethmoidālis (ethmoidal notch), tubercūlum jugulāre (jugular
   tubercle), lingūla sphenoidālis (sphenoidal lingula), semicanālis tubae auditīvae
   (canal for auditory tube), meātus acustīcus externus (external acustic meatus),
   lamīna perpendiculāris (perpendicular plate), facies palatīna (palatine surface),
   vesīca bilīāris (gallbladder), glandūlæ endocrīnae (endocrine glands), junctūrae
   cingūli pelvīci (joints of pelvic girdle), urethra masculīna (male urethra), spina
   scapūlæ (spine of scapula), intestīnum tenue (small intestine), alveŏlus dentālis
   (tooth socket), tunīca mucōsa linguæ (mucous membrane of tongue), arcus
dentālis mandibulāris (mandibular dental arcade), trigōnum submandibulāre (submandibular triangle)

2. Write down and determine the stressed syllable paying attention to the natural length or brevity of the last but one vowel:
   tubercūlum anterius (anterior tubercle), incisūrae costāles (costal slits),
   vertēbra thoracīca (thoracic vertebra), ductus choledŏchus (bile duct), forāmen
   apīcis radīcis dentis (apical foramen of the root of the tooth), vesīca urinaria
   (urinary bladder), Oleum Ricīnī (castor oil), Sirūpus Rubī idaei (raspberry
   syrup), Solutio lōdi spirituōsa (iodine spirituous solution), eczĕma allergĭcum
   (allergic eczema), stomatītis chronicā (chronic stomatitis), systēma condūcens
   cordis (conducting system of heart), apertūra thorācis inferior (lower opening of
   chest), muscūlus levātor fornīcis (muscle raising fornix), Tinctūra Valeriānae
   (tincture of valerian), facies anterior partis petrōsae (anterior surface of petrous
   part), canāles palatīni minōres (lesser palatine canals), systēma lymphoideum
   (lymphoid system)

3. Write down the terms, put the signs of length or brevity over the last but
   one syllable (using if necessary vocabularies of this manual) and determine in
   writing the accent:
   ligamentum popliteum obliquum (oblique popliteal ligament), cartilago
   thyreoida (thyroid cartilage), bifurcatio tracheae (bifurcation of trachea),
   musculus anconeus (anconeus muscle), atrium meatus mediī (atrium of middle
   meatus), Extractum Crataegi fluidum (liquid extract of hawthorn), paralysis
   congenita (congenital paralysis), syndromum immunodeficientiae acquisitae
   (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome), tuberositas pterygoidea (pterygoid
   tuberosity), anaemia myelogenā (myelogenous anemia), arteria circumfexa
   humeri anterior (anterior circumflex humeral artery), organum vasculosum
   laminae terminalis (vascular organ of lamina terminalis), fissura longitudinalis
   cerebri (longitudinal cerebral fissure), fasciculus uncinatus cerebelli (uncinate
   fasciculus of cerebellum), kyphosis thoracica (thoracic kyphosis), linea glutea
   inferior (inferior gluteal line), syndesmoses cranii (cranial syndesmoses),
   articulatio sacrococcigea (sacroccygeal joint), segmentum anterius medialis
   (anterior medial segment), infundibulum vesicae felleae (infundibulum of
   gallbladder), musculi palati mollis et fauces (muscles of soft palate and fauces),
   papilla duodeni major (major duodenal papilla), ostium atroventricularis
   sinistrum (left atrioventricular orifice), membrana bronchopericardiaca
   (bronchopericardial membrane), arteria pharyngea ascendens (ascending
   pharyngeal artery), tuberositas deltoidea (deltoid tuberosity)
Part II
ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

Lesson 3
THE STRUCTURE OF LATIN ANATOMICAL TERMS.
NOUN AND ITS GRAMMAR CATEGORIES

§ 18. THE LATIN TERMINOLOGY IN ANATOMY AND ITS STRUCTURE

Anatomical terminology naming all parts of the human body is the base of medical terminology. For more than a century the so-called Terminologia Anatomica — The International Anatomical Terminology in Latin which is accepted by anatomists of the world has existed. Latin is also the base for creating equivalent terms in other languages. The last edition of this International Anatomic Terminology appeared in 1998 and it contains 7428 terms.

The anatomical term is a word or several words used to denote a definite unit or structure of the human body. So Latin anatomical terms may consist of one, two, three, four and more words — up to 8.

One-word terms consist of one noun in singular or plural:
cor (heart), fauces (fauces)

Two-word terms may consist of:
1. A noun with an adjective in singular or plural:
crista renālis (renal crest); nodi faciāles (facial nodes)
2. Two nouns in singular or plural:
corpus vertēbrae (body of vertebra); terminatiōnes nervōrum (nerve terminals)

Three-word terms may consist of:
1. Three nouns:
ala cristae galli (wing of cock’s crest); lamīna arcus vertēbrae (lamina of vertebral arch)
2. One noun plus two adjectives:
glandŏlae salivariae minōres (minor salivary glands); plexus cervicālis posterior (posterior cervical plexus)
3. Two nouns plus one adjective:
arcus anterior atlantis (anterior arch of atlas); tuberosītas ossis sacri (sacral tuberosity)

In multiword terms several nouns and adjectives can be presented:
fissūra horizontālis pulmōnis dextri (horizontal fissure of right lung);
proccessus uncinātus vertēbrae thoracīcae primae (uncinate process of the first thoracic vertebra)
§ 19. Grammar categories of noun

The grammar categories of a Latin noun are the following: 1. Gender. 2. Number. 3. Case. 4. Declension.

There are three genders in Latin: masculine (masculīnum m); feminine (feminīnum f); neutral (neutrum n).

English nouns, in contrast to Latin ones, have only a natural gender: nouns denoting males are masculine (boy, man), nouns denoting females are feminine (girl, women) and nouns denoting inanimate objects are of neutral gender (bone, vessel).

Latin nouns always have only a grammar gender, which is determined by the ending, but what is more significant, by gender signs too (m, f, n). These gender signs are given in the dictionaries, where nouns are presented in the so-called word or dictionary form, which we shall discuss later.

As to the number, both English and Latin have two numbers — singular (singulāris) and plural (plurālis). Just like in English, the number of the noun in Latin shows whether we speak about one thing or more than one. Plural indications in English are very simple (endings -s or -es). In Latin, these indications are more numerous and are determined by the gender and declension. Plural endings will be discussed in detail in a special section.

Case as a grammar category is not presented in every language. It is absent, for example, in French, Italian and Spanish. As to English, we can speak about a “common case” and a “possessive case”. In contrast to English, in Latin there are six different forms of noun endings corresponding to each case. Only four case forms of Latin nouns are used in medical terms:

**Nominatīvus, Nominative** (answers the questions who, what)

**Genetīvus, Genitive** (answers the questions whose, of what)

**Accusatīvus, Accusative** (answers the questions whom, what)

**Ablatīvus, Ablative** (answers the questions by whom, with what).

The first two cases (Nominative and Genitive) are mainly used in the medical terminology, the other cases occur more rarely, they are used in anatomical and pharmaceutical terms in combination with prepositions.

§ 20. Dictionary form of nouns

It is of vital importance to always remember that each Latin noun must be learnt in its “Dictionary form”. This form consists of three components:

1. The full form of the Nominative singular.
2. The Genitive singular ending, indicating the type of declension.
3. Definition of the grammar gender (with the letters m, f, n):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Written form</th>
<th>Oral form</th>
<th>English equivalent of the noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ala, ae f</td>
<td>ala, alae, feminīnum</td>
<td>wing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ligamentum, i n</td>
<td>ligamentum, ligamenti, neutrum</td>
<td>ligament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nervus, i m</td>
<td>nervus, nervi, masculīnum</td>
<td>nerve</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
20

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Written form</th>
<th>Oral form</th>
<th>English equivalent of the noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cancer, cri m</td>
<td>cancer, cancri, masculīnum</td>
<td>cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eucalyptus, i f</td>
<td>Eucalyptus, Eucalyptī, feminīnum</td>
<td>eucalypt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cornu, oris n</td>
<td>cornu, cornus, neutrum</td>
<td>horn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corpus, ōris n</td>
<td>corpus, corpōris, neutrum</td>
<td>body</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 21. THE STEM OF THE NOUN AND THE WAY TO DETERMINE IT

The stem of the noun is essential for declining and word building. It is determined by removing the Genitive ending which indicates the type of the declension:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dictionary form</th>
<th>Full form of the Genitive</th>
<th>Stem of noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>crista, ae f ri</td>
<td>crist-ae</td>
<td>crista</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulcus, i m —</td>
<td>sulc-i</td>
<td>sulcus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancer, cri m —</td>
<td>cancr-i</td>
<td>cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forāmen, inis n —</td>
<td>foramīn-is</td>
<td>foramīn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arcus, us m —</td>
<td>arc-us</td>
<td>arc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facies, ēi f —</td>
<td>faci-ēi</td>
<td>facies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 22. DESCRIPTION OF DECLENSIONS

Nouns with the ending -ae in the Genitive singular belong to the 1st declension; they are mainly feminine:
alae, ae f — wing
cristae, ae f — crest
vertēbrae, ae f — vertebrae

Nouns having the ending -i in the Genitive singular belong to the 2nd declension.

Nouns of the masculine gender can have the ending -us in the Nominative (the greatest part) or -er (very limited in number):
angūlus, i m — angle
muscūlus, i m — muscle
nervus, i m — nerve
cancer, cri m — cancer (the full form of Genitive — cancri)

Nouns of the neutral gender have also two types: nouns with the ending form -um (the main part), and nouns with the ending form -on (they are of Greek origin), compare:
ligamentum, i n — ligament
dorsum, i n — back
encephālon, i n — brain
colon, i n — colon, large intestine

The 3rd declension is the most numerous one. Here are presented the nouns of all genders and with different endings in the Nominative having the ending, — is in the Genitive. They are commonly divided into two groups.
The first one includes nouns having equal number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive (so-called parisyllaba):

basis, basis f (basis, is f) — base

caṇālis, caṇālis m (canalis, is m) — canal

The second and the most numerous part of the nouns has one more syllable in the Genitive compared to the Nominative (so-called imparisyllaba):

apex, apīcis m (the written dictionary form apex, ēcis m) — apex, tip
tuberosītās, tuberositātis f (tuberosītas, ātis f) — tuberosity
forāmen, forāminis n (forāmen, īnis n) — foramen, opening

If such nouns have only one syllable in the Nominative, then the complete form of the Genitive is:

dens, dentis m — tooth

os, ossis n — bone

pars, partis f — part

The 4th declension includes nouns of the masculine and neutral gender having the ending -us in the Genitive:

processus, processus m (processus, us m) — process
ductus, ductus m (ductus, us m) — duct
cornu, cornus n (cornu, us n) — horn

The 5th declension includes nouns having the ending -ei in the Genitive:

facies, faciēi f (facies, ēi f) — face, surface

Attention! Remember the following:

1. Feminine nouns may occur in the 2nd and 4th declensions, masculine ones in the 1st: oculista, ae m (ophthalmologist), Eucalyptus, i f (eucalypt), manus, us f (hand).

2. Two groups of nouns of the Greek origin retain their particular form:

2.1. Feminine nouns with the ending -e in the Nominative and -es in the Genitive: raphe, es f (a seam on the bony tissue).

2.2. Masculine nouns with the ending -es in the Nominative and -ae in the Genitive: diabētes, ae m (diabetes)

§ 23. Exercises

1. Give in written form the dictionary form of the following nouns:

apex, basis, caṇālis, cancer, cornu, corpus, cranium, dens, encephālon, facies, ganglion, lingua, mandibula, nasus, nervus, orgānon, os, radix, scapula, sternum, sulcus, tuber, tuberculum, tuberositas

2. Give in written form the dictionary form of the following nouns and define their stem and declension:

abdomen, angle, arch, base, bone, canal, crest, duct, head, horn, ligament, lower jaw, nose, opening, region, root (radix), skin, skull, surface, tongue, tooth, upper jaw
3. Write down the dictionary form of the nouns, translate the terms from Latin:

   *apex linguae; angŭlus faciēi nasi; basis cranii; canālis radīcis dentis; corpus vertĕbrae; facies tubercūli costae; incisūra mandibūlae; nervus encephāli; pars faciēi sterni; septum nasi; sulcus sinus; tuber maxillae*

4. Give the dictionary form of each noun, translate the terms into Latin:

   *abdomen cavity; arch of aorta; base of mandible; body of upper jaw; canal of dental radix (radix of tooth); cancer of the skin; cavity of the nose; cervical part (part of cervix); crest of the rib head; face bone; head of rib; nerve of the brain; nervous node of the neck; part of the process; region of skull; skin nerve; sternal angle (angle of sternum); surface of knee; top of the horn; vertebral arch (arch of vertebra)*

§ 24. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin-English vocabulary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1st declension</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>costa, ae f — rib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incisūra, ae f — incisure, slit or notch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lingua, ae f — tongue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mandibūla, ae f — lower jaw, mandible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxilla, ae f — upper jaw, maxilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2nd declension</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angŭlus, i m — angle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cancer, cri m — cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cranium, i n — skull</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encephālon i n — brain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ganglion, i n — nervous node</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nasus, i m — nose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nervus, i m — nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orgānon, i n — organ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>septum, i n — septum, dividing wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sternum, i n — sternum, breast- bone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulcus, i m — sulcus, furrow or groove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tubercūlum, i n — tubercle, small rounded swelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3rd declension</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apex, ēcis m — apex, top</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basis, is f — base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caput, ētis n — head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>canālis, is m — canal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corpus, ēris n — body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dens, dentis m — tooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>os, ossis n — bone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
radix, īcis f — radix, root
regio, ōnis f — region
tuber, ĕris n — tüber, large rounded swelling
tuberositas, ātis f — tuberosity

4th declension
cornu, us n — horn, horn-shaped process
processus, us m — process
sinus, us m — sinus, hollow curvature or cavity

5th declension
facies, ēi f — face, surface

English-Latin vocabulary
abdomen — abdōmen, īnis n
aorta — aorta, ae f
angle — angūlus, i m
apex, top — apex, īcis m
arch — arcus, us m
base — basis, is f
body — corpus, ŏris n
bone — os, ossis n
canal — canālis, is m
cavity — cavātas, ātis f
cervical: see neck
costal: see rib
cranial: see skull
crest — crista, ae f
dental: see tooth
duct — ductus, us m
ganglion, nervous node — ganglion, i n
face — facies, ēi f
head — caput, ītis n
horn — cornu, us n
knee — genu, us n
ligament — ligamentum, i n
lower jaw, mandible — mandibūla, ae f
neck — cervix, īcis f
nerve — nervus, i m
nose — nasus, i m
opening — forāmen, īnis n
part — pars, partis f
region — regio, ōnis f
rib — costa, ae f
root, radix — radix, īcis f  
skin — cutis, is f  
skull — cranium, i n  
surface — facies, ēi f  
tongue — lingua, ae f  
tooth — dens, dentis m  
upper jaw, maxilla — maxilla, ae f  
vertebra — vertēbra, ae f  
vertebral: see vertebra

Lesson 4
ADJECTIVES AND THEIR DICTIONARY FORM.  
ADJECTIVE AND NOUN AGREEMENT

§ 25. INTRODUCTORY INFORMATION ABOUT ADJECTIVES IN LATIN

Both in English and Latin the adjective is a word expressing the quality of a thing: long, short, nasal, simple and so on.

But in contrast to English, Latin adjectives have always grammar agreement with their nouns, that is a noun and an adjective must have the same gender, case and number. The adjective follows the noun.

According to their endings all Latin adjectives are divided into two groups.

§ 26. 1ST GROUP OF ADJECTIVES

Adjectives which have three gender endings make up the 1st group: Masculine forms have the ending -us or -er, Feminine — -a, Neutral — -um:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Neutral</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>longus (long)</td>
<td>longa</td>
<td>longum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber (free)</td>
<td>libēra</td>
<td>libērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dexter (right)</td>
<td>dextra</td>
<td>dextrum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The dictionary form of adjectives includes the full masculine form, endings of the feminine and the neutral ones (when answering, every gender form is pronounced!). All these forms are in the Nominative:

- longus, a, um — long  
- liber, ēra, ērum — free  
- dexter, tra, trum — right

oral form: longus, longa, longum  
oral form: liber, libēra, libērum  
oral form: dexter, dextra, dextrum

In the last two adjectives the endings of the feminine and the neutral forms are enlarged. It is common for the adjectives with the ending -er in the masculine form because it helps us determine, whether the vowel -e in the feminine and the neutral forms is lost or not.

The gender forms of the adjectives of this group have the declension pattern in the nouns of the 1st and 2nd declensions: feminine forms are declined
like the nouns of the first declension, masculine and neutral forms — like the nouns of the second declension. The stem of these adjectives is determined like that of the nouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender form</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Declension</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>longus</td>
<td>longi</td>
<td>second</td>
<td>long-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>longa</td>
<td>longae</td>
<td>first</td>
<td>long-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neutral</td>
<td>longum</td>
<td>longi</td>
<td>second</td>
<td>long-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>liber</td>
<td>libēri</td>
<td>second</td>
<td>liber-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>libēra</td>
<td>libērae</td>
<td>first</td>
<td>liber-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neutral</td>
<td>libērum</td>
<td>libēri</td>
<td>second</td>
<td>liber-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>dexter</td>
<td>dextrī</td>
<td>second</td>
<td>dextr-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>dextra</td>
<td>dextrae</td>
<td>first</td>
<td>dextr-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neutral</td>
<td>dextrum</td>
<td>dextrī</td>
<td>second</td>
<td>dextr-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As to the adjectives with the masculine form -er, it is more convenient to determine their stem from the feminine Genitive form.

§ 27. 2ND GROUP OF ADJECTIVES

This group includes adjectives following the rules of the third declension of nouns. According to their gender endings they are divided into three subgroups. The stem of this group of adjectives is determined like in the preceding group.

The first subgroup is made up of adjectives having three gender endings: -er for masculine, -is for feminine, -e for neutral:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine form</th>
<th>Feminine form</th>
<th>Neutral form</th>
<th>Genitive form</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acer (sharp, acute)</td>
<td>acris</td>
<td>acre</td>
<td>acris</td>
<td>acr-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celer (quick, fast)</td>
<td>celĕris</td>
<td>celĕre</td>
<td>celĕris</td>
<td>celer-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The written dictionary form, as in the previous group, includes the full masculine form and the endings of the feminine and the neutral:

acer, cris, cre
celer, éris, ère

When answering orally, every gender form is pronounced in full.

The second subgroup includes adjectives with two gender endings. masculine and feminine forms have the common ending -is, neutral — the ending -e:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine and Feminine form</th>
<th>Neutral form</th>
<th>Genitive form</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>brevis (brief, short)</td>
<td>breve</td>
<td>brevis</td>
<td>brev-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frontālis (frontal)</td>
<td>frontāle</td>
<td>frontālis</td>
<td>frontal-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacrālis (sacral)</td>
<td>sacrāle</td>
<td>sacrālis</td>
<td>sacrāl-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adjectives of this subgroup are the most numerous in every branch of medical terminology.
The dictionary form of these adjectives consists of the full masculine/feminine form and the ending of neutral:

brevis, e; frontalis, e; sacralis, e

The third subgroup is made up of adjectives with one ending, common for the three genders. There are four kinds of such common endings:

1) -ns: sapiens (masculine, feminine, neutral) intelligent
2) -s: teres (masculine, feminine, neutral) round
3) -r: par (masculine, feminine, neutral) equal, pair
4) -x: simplex (masculine, feminine, neutral) simple

Let us look at these adjectives from the point of view of their Genitive form and their stem:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender form</th>
<th>Nominative form</th>
<th>Genitive form</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>sapiens</td>
<td>sapientis</td>
<td>sapient-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>sapiens</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neutral</td>
<td>sapiens</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>teres</td>
<td>teretis</td>
<td>teret-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>teres</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neutral</td>
<td>teres</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>par</td>
<td>paris</td>
<td>par-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>par</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neutral</td>
<td>par</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>simplex</td>
<td>simplicis</td>
<td>simplic-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>simplex</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neutral</td>
<td>simplex</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The dictionary form of these adjectives includes the Nominative form and the Genitive ending:
sapiens, entis (oral form sapiens, sapientis)
teres, ĕtis (oral form teres, terĕtis)
par, is (oral form par, paris)
simplex, ćis (oral form simplex, simplicis)

§ 28. ADJECTIVE AND NOUN AGREEMENT

To agree an adjective and a noun in Latin means to say or to write these parts of speech in the same gender, number and case. To do it you should:

1) imagine or write dictionary forms of the noun and adjective;
2) correctly determine the gender, number and case of the noun;
3) place the noun in the first place of the term
4) choose the correct grammar form of the adjective for this noun and put it in the second place (after the noun).

Let us take, e. g., the following word combinations: 1) sacral vertebra; 2) carotid tubercle 3) palatine groove

First of all, let us write down the dictionary form of every word:
sacral — sacralis, e; carotid — caroticus, a, um; tubercle — tuberculum, i
n; palatine — palatinus, a, um; groove — sulcus, i m; vertebra — vertebra, ae f

Now, let us make up the procedure of agreement:

1) vertebra: gender — feminine, number — singular, case — Nominative.
   So in the dictionary form of the adjective we choose the form sacralis and
   agree it in this way with the noun vertebra: vertebra sacralis

2) tuberculum: gender — neutral, singular, Nominative.
   That’s why we choose the adjective form caroticum and make up the term
   tuberculum caroticum.

3) sulcus: Masculine, Singular, Nominative.
   So for this noun we need the adjective form palatīnus. Writing down it after
   the noun sulcus we get as a result the term sulcus palatīnus.

   If we have to agree two adjectives with one noun, the order of agreement is
   the following. The adjective indicating the main space location of the object
   (cardiācus, a, um cardiac; cervicālis, e cervical, gastrīcus, a, um gastric and so
   on) is placed after the noun: right gastric artery — arteria gastrica dextra, deep
   lymph vessel — vas lymphaticum profundum.

   One should be able not only to agree adjectives and nouns in
   the Nominative, but also make up the Genitive form from this Nominative
   construction. So, let us make the Genitive forms of the above mentioned
   Nominative forms:

   1) vertebra sacralis: from the dictionary form we already know the Genitive
      form and write it down: vertebrae. Now, we have to determine the Genitive form
      of sacralis. As we have seen above, this adjective belongs to the third
      declension, that’s why the Genitive form should have the ending -is, that is
      sacralis, which finally makes in the Genitive the word combination vertebrae
      sacralis.

   2) tuberculum caroticum: both the noun and the adjective belong to
      the second declension, that’s why they have to receive the ending -i in
      the Genitive form — tuberculi carotici.

   3) sulcus palatīnus: sulcus, as it is evident from the dictionary form,
      belongs to the second declension, the ending -us in the adjective palatinus tells
      us that this form belongs to the second declension and so we can determine
      the Genitive form as palatīni. The whole term in Genitive form is sulci palatini.

§ 29. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form of the following adjectives:
   articulāris, celēris, composītum, dextrum, frontālis, impar, interna, libērum,
   nasāle, palatīna, sapiens, simplex, teres, thoracīcum

2. Make up the dictionary form of every word, translate the word
   combinations and add forms of the Genitive singular for every word
   combination:
articulatio simplex; canālis longus; cornu coccygēum; ductus sublinguālis; facies articulāris; ganglion impar; ligamentum teres; margo sinister; os hyoideum; pars dextra; pulsus cardiācus celer; sulcus brevis; vas lymphatīcum profundum; vena occipitālis

3. Agree the following adjectives with the nouns:
   angūlus, i m (frontālis, e; mastoideus, a, um);
   articulatio, ōnis f (composītus, a, um; sinister, tra, trum; simplex, īcis);
   facies, ēi f (costālis, e; internus, a, um; dexter, tra, trum)
   ganglion, i n (impar, āris; sublinguālis, e);
   ligamentum, i n (teres, ētis; brevis, e);
   margo, īnis m (dexter, tra, trum; liber, ēra, ērum; nasālis, e);
   musculus, i m (teres, ētis; magnus, a, um);
   nervus, i m (hypoglossus, a, um; occipitālis, e);
   pars, partis f (petrōsus, a, um; frontālis, e);
   processus, us m (articulāris, e; palatīnus, a, um; brevis, e)
   ramus, i m (communicāns, ntis; costālis, e; externus, a, um);

4. Make up grammatical agreement of the adjectives with the nouns in Latin:
   arch (dental, venous, left); artery (deep, lingual, right); bone (short, palatine, hyoid); canal (long, short, sacral); crest (lacrimal, external); duct (hepatic, sublingual); joint (complex, simple); process (palatine, costal); region (cervical, mastoid); tubercle (carotid, lateral); vein (deep, sacral); vertebra (prominent, thoracic); vessel (left, lymphatic)

5. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate the following terms into Latin:
   articular surface; costal arch; deep lymphatic vessel; frontal crest; lateral thoracic vein; lateral pterygoid muscle; left hepatic duct; long ligament; medial root; occipital artery; occipital angle; oval opening; palatine process; superficial vein; vertebral column

§ 30. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 4

Latin-English vocabulary

1st declension

arteria, ae f — artery
vena, ae f — vein
vertēbra, ae f — vertebra

2nd declension

ligamentum, i n — ligament
muscūlus, i m — muscle

3rd declension

articulatio, ōnis f — joint
margo, īnis m — margin, border
pars, partis f — part
vas, vasis n — vessel

ductus, us m — duct
pulsus, us m — pulse

4th declension

cardiācus, a, um — cardiac
coccygēus, a, um — coccygeal
compositus, a, um — complex
dexter, tra, trum — right
externus, a, um — external
iliācus, a, um — iliac
internus, a, um — internal
hyoideus, a, um — hyoid, sublingual (bone)
hypoglossus, a, um — hypoglossal, sublingual (nerve)
liber, ĕra, ĕrum — free
longus, a, um — long
lymphatīcus, a, um — lymphatic
magnus, a, um — large (vein), magnus (adductor), great (nerve)
mastoideus, a, um — mastoid
palatinus, a, um — palatine
petrōsus, a, um — stony
profundus, a, um — deep
sacer, cra, crum — sacral (bone)
sinister, tra, trum — left
thoracicīcus, a, um — thoracic

1st group of adjectives

articulāris, e — articular
brevis, e — short
celer, ěris, ěre — celer (pulse), swift
communicans, ntis — communicative
costālis, e — costal
frontālis, e — frontal
impar, āris — impar, unpaired
nasālis, e — nasal
occipitālis, e — occipital
sacrālis, e — sacral
sapiens, entis — intelligent, clever
simplex, īcis — simple
sublinguālis e — sublingual (excepting nerve and bone)
superficiālis, e — superficial
teres, ētis — round (excepting foramen)
**English-Latin glossary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>artery</td>
<td>arteria, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carotid</td>
<td>caroticus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cervical</td>
<td>cervicālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>column</td>
<td>columna, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complex</td>
<td>compositus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>costal</td>
<td>costālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deep</td>
<td>profundus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dental</td>
<td>dentālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duct</td>
<td>ductus, us m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>external</td>
<td>externus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hepatic</td>
<td>hepaticus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyoid</td>
<td>hyoideus, a, um (os)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>joint</td>
<td>articulatio, ōnis f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lacrimal</td>
<td>lacrimālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lateral</td>
<td>laterālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ligament</td>
<td>ligamentum, i n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lingual</td>
<td>linguālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>left</td>
<td>sinister, tra, trum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>longus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lymphatic</td>
<td>lymphaticus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mastoid</td>
<td>mastoideus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medial</td>
<td>mediālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occipital</td>
<td>occipitālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oval</td>
<td>ovālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palatine</td>
<td>palatīnus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prominent</td>
<td>promīnens, entis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pterygoid</td>
<td>pterygoideus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right</td>
<td>dexter, tra, trum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacral</td>
<td>sacrālis, e (except for os)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
<td>brevis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superficial</td>
<td>superficiālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sublingual</td>
<td>sublingualis, e (except for os and nervus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vein</td>
<td>vena, ae f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venous</td>
<td>venōsus, a, um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vertebral</td>
<td>vertebrālis, e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vessel</td>
<td>vas, vasis n</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 5
DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.
PECULIARITIES OF THE USE OF COMPARATIVE
AND SUPERLATIVE DEGREES IN ANATOMICAL TERMS

§ 31. INTRODUCTORY REMARKS TO THE TOPIC

Comparative and superlative as degrees of comparison exist both in English and Latin, that’s why there is no need to explain the essence of these grammar phenomenon. It is more essential to note that in the international medical nomenclatures, the forms of comparative and superlative have a relatively narrow sphere of use. Most frequently they are used in the anatomical terminology. As to the grammar formation, both comparative and superlative are built from the stem of the positive degree, that is from the dictionary form of the adjective.

§ 32. THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE

To form the comparative degree, it is necessary 1) to find the stem of the positive degree; 2) to add the suffix -ior for the masculine and feminine forms and -ius for the neutral form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive degree</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Comparative masculine and feminine form</th>
<th>Comparative neutral form</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>longus, a, um (long)</td>
<td>long-</td>
<td>longior</td>
<td>longius</td>
<td>longer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruber, bra, brum (red)</td>
<td>rubr-</td>
<td>rubrior</td>
<td>rubrius</td>
<td>redder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simplex, icis (simple)</td>
<td>simplic-</td>
<td>simplicior</td>
<td>simplicius</td>
<td>more simple</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The full dictionary form of the masculine and the feminine has the ending -ior while the neutral form has -ius:

longior, ius (written dictionary form) | longior, longius (oral form)
rubrior, ius (written dictionary form) | rubrior, rubrius (oral form)
simplicior, ius (written dictionary form) | simplicior, simplicius (oral form)

Adjectives in the comparative degree have the same pattern of declension as nouns of the third declension. Their distinctive feature is the ending -ōris in the Genitive:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative form of comparative</th>
<th>Genitive form of comparative</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>longior (m, f)</td>
<td>longiōris</td>
<td>longior-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>longius (n)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rubrior (m, f)</td>
<td>rubriōris</td>
<td>rubrior-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rubrius (n)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simplicior</td>
<td>simpliciōris</td>
<td>simplicior-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simplicius</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The grammar agreement of the comparative form with nouns follows the common rules:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive degree</th>
<th>Comparative degree</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>m processus longus</td>
<td>m processus longior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n ligamentum longum</td>
<td>n ligamentum longius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f costa longa</td>
<td>f costa longior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n systēma simplex</td>
<td>n systēma simplicius</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 33. COMPARATIVE FORMS IN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

In anatomical (and histological) terminology only limited forms of adjectives in the comparative degree are used. First of all, comparative forms of the adjectives great (large) and little (small) are used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive degree of Latin adjective</th>
<th>English equivalents</th>
<th>Comparative form of Latin adjectives</th>
<th>English anatomical equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>magnus, a, um</td>
<td>great, large</td>
<td>maius (majus)</td>
<td>greater, larger, major</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, a, um</td>
<td>little, small</td>
<td>minor, minus</td>
<td>lesser, smaller, minor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the forms minor, minus we don’t see the full endings -ior, -ius, but that is a distinctive feature of these forms to remember.

In anatomical terminology four adjectives in the comparative form are also used, although from the point of view of English, not every of such forms expresses comparison:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin masculine and feminine form</th>
<th>Latin neural form</th>
<th>Latin dictionary form</th>
<th>English anatomical equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anterior</td>
<td>anterius</td>
<td>anterior, ius</td>
<td>anterior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>posterior</td>
<td>posterius</td>
<td>posterior, ius</td>
<td>posterior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superior</td>
<td>superius</td>
<td>superior, ius</td>
<td>upper, superior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inferior</td>
<td>inferius</td>
<td>inferior, ius</td>
<td>lower, inferior</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Thus, only 6 adjectives in the comparative degree are used in Latin anatomical terminology:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin dictionary form</th>
<th>Genitive form</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anterior, ius</td>
<td>anteriōris</td>
<td>anterior-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>posterior, ius</td>
<td>posteriōris</td>
<td>posterior-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superior, ius</td>
<td>superiōris</td>
<td>superior-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inferior, ius</td>
<td>inferiōris</td>
<td>inferior-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>major, ius</td>
<td>majōris</td>
<td>major-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minor, us</td>
<td>minōris</td>
<td>minor-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
We should note that the stem of the adjectives in the comparative degree coincides with the Nominative masculine and feminine forms ending with -ior.

The Genitive singular form in the comparative degree is formed by adding the ending -is to the stem.

It is necessary to remember that Latin adjectives in the comparative degree are always placed last in the multiword term:

- facies articularis superior — superior articular surface
- musculus obliquus capitis inferior — inferior oblique muscle of head

§ 34. THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE

Commonly, the superlative degree is formed by adding the suffix -issīm- and gender endings -us, -a, -um to the stem of the positive degree:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive degree</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Superlative degree</th>
<th>English equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>latus, a, um (broad, vast, wide)</td>
<td>lat-</td>
<td>latissimus, a, um</td>
<td>the broadest (vastest, widest), latissimus (in Anatomy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>longus, a, um (long)</td>
<td>long-</td>
<td>longissimus, a, um</td>
<td>the longest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subtilis, e (fine)</td>
<td>subtil-</td>
<td>subtilissimus, a, um</td>
<td>the finest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some forms of superlative degree are formed in a special way:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial form</th>
<th>Superlative degree</th>
<th>English anatomical equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>magnus, a, um (great)</td>
<td>maximus, a, um</td>
<td>the greatest, maximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, a, um (little, small)</td>
<td>minimus, a, um</td>
<td>the least, minimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inferior, ius (inferior, lower)</td>
<td>imus, a, um</td>
<td>lower, imus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superior, ius (superior, upper)</td>
<td>suprēmus, a, um</td>
<td>supreme, the highest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The dictionary form of adjectives in the superlative degree is similar to adjectives of the first group with the endings -us, -a, um. They are declined also like the adjectives of the first group and their stem is determined similarly.

§ 35. PECULIARITIES OF THE USE OF THE COMPARISON DEGREES OF THE ADJECTIVES MAGNUS, A, UM AND PARVUS, A, UM IN LATIN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

The quality of great (large) or little (small) can be expressed in Latin anatomical terminology by different forms of comparison degrees but the use of these forms, as a rule, is strictly regulated. As to English equivalent forms, unfortunately, we don’t observe here such a strict regulation. Moreover, different variants of above mentioned adjectives in different editions of “The International Anatomical Terminology” are used. In this textbook we have decided to use only the terms presented in the last official edition, that is “International Anatomical Terminology. FCAT. Federative Committee on Anatomical Terminology”. Stuttgart, New York: Thieme, 1998. It is necessary to stress that in this edition, the above mentioned Latin adjectives in
comparative and superlative forms are namely used as English anatomical equivalents.

Let us systematize the forms of comparison degrees of the above mentioned adjectives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin positive degree</th>
<th>English equivalent</th>
<th>Latin comparative degree</th>
<th>English anatomical equivalent</th>
<th>Latin superlative degree</th>
<th>English anatomical equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>magnus, a, um</td>
<td>great, large, magnus</td>
<td>major, majus</td>
<td>greater, larger, major</td>
<td>maximus, a, um</td>
<td>maximus, major</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, a, um</td>
<td>little, small</td>
<td>minor, minus, smaller</td>
<td>lesser, smaller, minor</td>
<td>minimus, a, um</td>
<td>minimus, little</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now some notes about the use of Latin degree comparison forms that you should remember.

1. Forms **magnus / parvus** are used, if a solitary anatomical structure is indicated:
   - forāmen (occipitāle) magnum — foramen (occipital) magnum
   - arteria pancreatīca magna — greater pancreatic artery
   - vena magna cerēbri — great cerebral vein
   - nervus aurīculāris magnus — great auricular nerve
   - muscūlus adductor magnus — adductor magnus muscle
   - nucleus magnus — large nucleus

2. Forms **major / minor** are used if dimensions of two similar and placed next to each other anatomical structures are compared:
   - ala major / ala minor — greater wing / lesser wing
   - pelvis major / pelvis minor — greater pelvis / lesser pelvis
   - nervus petrōsus major / nervus petrosus minor — greater petrosal nerve / lesser petrosal nerve
   - muscūlus pectorālis major / muscūlus pectorālis minor — pectoral major muscle / pectoral minor muscle
   - musculus teres major / musculus teres minor — teres major muscle / teres minor muscle

**There are some exceptions from this rule:**
- muscūlus adductor magnus / muscūlus adductor minīmus — adductor magnus / adductor minimus
- vena cardiāca magna / vena cardiāca parva — great cardiac vein / small cardiac vein
- vena saphēna magna / vena saphēna parva — great saphenous vein / small saphenous vein

The forms major / minor are most common in Latin anatomical terminology. As for English equivalents of such terms there is no, unfortunately, universal pattern of systematization of their use, and some irregular translation variants sometimes should be used, compare:
anulus iridis major — outer border of iris
anulus iridis minor — inner border of iris

One more example. It isn’t clear why the equivalent to arteria pancreatica magna in English is greater pancreatic artery, though there isn’t any artery with the opposite sense (lesser, smaller, minor) near this artery. Such examples can be numerous.

3. Forms maxĭmus / minĭmus are used in two meanings:
   a) in the meaning of the positive degree parvus (little):
      digitus minĭmus — little finger (in the list of the terms of general anatomy).
      But in terms with the noun muscle are so-called Latin Technical Termini (naturally, in English pronunciation as in other similar cases) used:
      musculus extensor digiti minimi — extensor digitii minimi
      musculus adductor digiti minimi brevis — adductor digitii minimi brevis
      musculus opponens digiti minimi — opponens digitii minimi
      In these cases the English equivalent minimus is to be understood as “the least”.
   b) forms maxĭmus / minĭmus only in the meaning the greatest / the least
      are used in the following terms:
      musculus glutēus maximus — gluteus maximus muscle
      musculus gluteus minĭmus — gluteus minimus muscle
      musculus scalēnus minĭmus — scalenus minimus muscle
      And only in one case the English form of the superlative degree is used:
      foramina venarum minimarum — openings of the smallest (cardiac) veins

§36. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word, translate it into English and make up the Genitive form of each word combination:
   ala major; cartilago alaris major; cornu majus; facies anterior; ganglion cervicale superius; incisura vertebralis inferior; ligamentum longitudinale anterius; nervus alveolaris inferior; pervis major; spina tympanica major; sulcus minor, tuberculum majus

2. Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:
   arcus anterior atlantis; arteria thyroidea ima; concha nasalis suprema; crista tuberculī majōris; facies anterior partis petrōsae; fossa cranii anterior; labium faciēi inferius; musculus longissimus capitis (thoracis); musculus palpēbrae superiōris; nervus splanchnicus imus, paries anterior gastris; pars libera membri superiōris; plica duodēni major; spina iliaca posterior inferior; sulcus sinus petrōsi inferiōris; vena saphēna parva

3. Write down the dictionary form and translate from English into Latin:
   adductor magnus muscle; anterior ethmoidal opening; bursa of the broadest muscle of back; crest of greater tubercle; gluteus minimus muscle; great
auricular nerve; lesser horn; greater palatine groove; greater petrosal nerve; groove for inferior petrosal sinus; groove for lesser petrosal nerve; highest nuchal line; inferior surface of the tongue; large nucleus; latissimus dorsi (muscle); lesser pelvis; lesser splanchnic nerve; lesser wing of sphenoidal bone; lower articular process; lower lip; major sublingual duct; posterior longitudinal ligament; small saphenous vein; smaller rhomboid muscle; superior nerve node; teres minor muscle; upper (lower) head

Attention! Constructions with the preposition for + adjective + noun are to be translated into Latin as the Genitive form without a preposition: canal for vertebral artery — canālis arteriae vertebrālis.

§ 37. Vocabulary to Lesson 5

Latin-English Vocabulary

Nouns of the 1st Declension

ala, ae f — wing
concha, ae f — concha (shell-shaped hole)
crista, ae f — crest
fossa, ae f — fossa (little hole)
palpēbra, ae f — eyelid
plica, ae f — fold
spina, ae f — spine

Nouns of the 2nd Declension

duodēnum, i n — duodenum
labium, i n — lip
membrum, i n — limb

Nouns of the 3rd Declension

atlas, ntis m — atlas (the first cervical vertebra)
cartilāgo, nis f — cartilage
gaster, tris f — stomach
paries, ētis m — wall
pelvis, is f — pelvis
thorax, ācis m — thorax, chest

Adjectives of the 1st Group

imus, a, um — imus (ima), lower
longissimus, a, um — the longest
parvus, a, um — little, small
saphēnus, a, um — saphenous
suprēmus, a, um — supreme, the highest
thyr(e)oideus, a, um — thyroid

Adjectives of the 2nd Group

alveolāris, e — alveolar
cervicālis, e — cervical
Adjectives in the form of comparative degree

- anterior, ius — anterior
- posterior, ius — posterior
- superior, ius — superior
- inferior, ius — inferior
- major, ius — major, greater
- minor, ius — minor, lesser, smaller

English-Latin glossary

- anterior — anterior, ius
- auricular — auriculāris, e
- adductor — (muscŭlus) adductor, ōris m
- back — dorsum, i n
- broadest — latissĭmus, a, um
- bursa (pouch, sac) — bursa, ae f
- ethmoidal — ethmoidālis, e
- gluteal — glutēus, a, um
- greater — major, jus
- head — caput, ītis n
- highest — suprēmus, a, um
- imus, ima — imus, a, um
- inferior — inferior, ius
- large — magnus, a, um
- latissimus — latissĭmus, a um
- lesser — minor, us
- lip — labium, i n
- longitudinal — longitudinālis, e
- lower — inferior, ius
- magnus, magnum — magnus, a, um
- major — major, jus
- minimus — minĭmus, a, um
- minor — minor, us
- nerve node — ganglion, i n
- nucleus — nucleus, i m
- nuchal — nuchālis, e
- pectoral — pectorālis, e
- petrosal — petrōsus, a, um
- rhomboid — rhomboideus, a, um
- saphenous — saphēnus. a, um
- smaller — minor, us
Lesson 6
THE MASCULINE GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION
OF NOUNS. NAMES OF MUSCLES PERFORMING
DIFFERENT FUNCTIONS

§ 38. MASCULINE NAMES IN THE THIRD DECLENSION
FROM THE POINT OF VIEW OF THEIR ENDINGS
IN THE NOMINATIVE AND THE GENITIVE

All masculine names in the third declension may be grouped according to the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative ending</th>
<th>Genitive ending</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Exceptions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-er</td>
<td>-ēris</td>
<td>trochanter, ēris m trochanter</td>
<td>cadāver, ēris n cadaver, dead body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ēris</td>
<td>vomer, ēris m vomer</td>
<td>tuber, ēris n tuber, tuberosity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-tris</td>
<td>venter, ntris m belly of the muscle</td>
<td>gaster, tris f stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mater, tris f mater, cerebral coat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-es</td>
<td>-ēdis</td>
<td>pes, pedis m foot</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ētis</td>
<td>paries, ētis m wall</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ex</td>
<td>-īcis</td>
<td>cortex, ēcis m cortex, crust</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-o</td>
<td>-īnis</td>
<td>homo, īnis m man</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-ōnis</td>
<td>pulmo, ōnis m lung</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-or</td>
<td>-ōris</td>
<td>tumor, ōris m tumor</td>
<td>arbor, ōris f tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>cor, cordis n heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-os</td>
<td>-oris</td>
<td>flos, floris m flower</td>
<td>os, oris n mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>os, ossis n bone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Learning by heart this table helps constitute agreement of adjectives and nouns.

§ 39. SOME EXPLANATIONS TO THE EXCEPTIONS
PRESENTED IN THE TABLE

1. The noun arbor is used to denote two anatomical structures having a shape similar to a tree:
   a) arbor bronchiālis (bronchial tree)
   b) arbor vitae cerebelli (arbor vitae of cerebellum, medullar body of cerebellum having a form of a tree in its sections).
2. The noun mater in the combination with adjectives takes the second place:
   a) dura mater encephali (cranialis) — dura mater of brain (cranial dura mater)
   b) pia mater medullae spinalis — spinal pia mater
   c) arachnoidea mater — arachnoid mater

§ 40. LATIN NAMES OF MUSCLES PERFORMING DIFFERENT FUNCTIONS

Latin names of muscles performing different functions (rotation, raising, pressing, bending and so on) consist of two words. The noun musculus (m.) is put in the first place with the name of the muscle following it:

- m. (musculus) levator — Levator
- m. (musculus) masseter — Masseter
- m. (musculus) tensor — Tensor

As we see, English equivalents contain merely the name of a muscle. This rule relates to all muscle names of English anatomical terms.

It is important to remember that in Latin terms the following strict word order of muscle names is observed.

1. The noun muscle takes the 1st place.
2. The name of muscle takes the 2nd place.
3. The name of the structure, where the muscle is functioning, takes the third place and this name consisting of one or two words is always presented in the Genitive.
4. If the muscle has an adjective (long, short, vast and so on), this adjective is the last in the combination:

- Extensor digiti minimi — musculus extensor digiti minimi
- Flexor pollicis brevis — musculus flexor pollicis brevis
- Pronator quadratus — musculus pronator quadratus
- Tensor veli palatini — musculus tensor veli palatini
- Levator anguli oris — musculus levator anguli oris

As we can see, Latin technical terms predominate in English equivalents. Genuine English names are absent and Latin words are transliterated.

As to the Latin names of muscles which denote different functions, they are, as a rule, nouns of the third declension with the ending -or, more seldom -er. To be more precise, 18 muscles have the ending -or and only 3 — the ending -er.

In two cases, there are several muscle names to denote the same function. So muscles named arrector, cremaster, levator may fulfill elevation. The muscles compressor, constrictor, sphincter fulfil compression. In these cases every muscle has its certain sphere of application which is to be memorized.
§ 41. Exercises

1. *Give the dictionary form of every word and translate from Latin:*

- ala vomĕris; arachnoidea mater; arbor vitae cerebelli; cadāver hominis; cortex renis; dura mater craniālis seu dura mater encephāli; paries externus ductus cochleāris; paries gastris posterior, pars superior pedis dextri; pia mater spinālis; tumor pariētis gastris; venter anterior muscūli digastrici; vestibūlum oris

2. *Write down the dictionary form and translate into Latin:*

- angle of mouth; bronchial tree; cardiac notch of left lung; dorsal artery of foot; frontal tuber of cranium; greater trochanter and lesser trochanter; intelligent man (as a biological species); parietal tuber; pelvic part of ureter; posterior wall of stomach; right border of heart; sole of the foot; vomerine groove (=groove of vomer)

3. *Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:*

- muscūlus adductor digiti minimi; muscūlus levātor labii superiōris; muscūlus levātor scapūlae; muscūlus pronātor quadrātus; muscūlus sphincter pupillae; muscūlus tensor fasciae latae; pars profunda muscūli massetēris

4. *Write down the dictionary form and translate from English into Latin:*

- Adductor minimus; Depressor of lower lip; Extensor indicis; Flexor digiti minimi brevis; Flexor pollicis longus; Rotator of neck; inferior Constrictor of pharynx; Tensor veli palatini

§ 42. Vocabulary to Lesson 6

**Latin-English dictionary**

**Nouns of the 1st declension**

- fascia, ae f — fascia
- planta, ae f — sole
- pupilla, ae f — pupil
- scapūla, ae f — scapula, shoulder blade
- vita, ae f — life

**Nouns of the 2nd declension**

- cerebellum, i n — cerebellum
- digitus, i m — finger
- vestibūlum, i n — vestibule

**Nouns of the 3rd declension**

- m. adductor, ōris m — adductor (bringing muscle)
- arbor, ōris f — tree
- arbor vitae — arbor vitae
- cadāver, ēris n — cadaver (dead body)
- cortex, īcis m — cortex (crust)
- homo, īnis m — man
- m. levator, ōris m — levator (elevating muscle)
mater, tris f — mater (cerebral coat)
m. massēter, ēris m — masseter (chewing muscle)
os, oris n — mouth
pes, pedis m — foot
m. pronātor, ōris m — pronator (muscle turning the forearm)
ren, renis m — kidney
seu — or
m. sphincter, ēris m — sphincter (compressing muscle)
m. tensor, ōris m — tensor (straining muscle)
tumor, ōris m — tumor (swelling, growth)
vomer, ēris m — vomer
venter, tris m — belly (of the muscle)

**Adjectives of the 1st group**
arachnoideus, a um — arachnoid
digastricus, a um — digastric
durus, a, um — solid
dura mater — dura mater
latus, a, um — broad
fascia lata — fascia lata
quadrātus, a, um — square, quadrate (muscle), quadratus (pronator)

**Adjectives of the 3rd group**
cochleāris, e — cochlear
craniālis, e — cranial
spinālis, e — spinal

**English-Latin glossary**
Adductor (bringing muscle) — m. adductor, ōris m
border — margo, īnis m
bronchial — bronchiālis, e
Constrictor (compressing muscle) — m. constrictor, ōris m
Depressor (lowing muscle) — m. depressor, ōris m
digitus, digiti — digitus, i m
dorsal — dorsālis, e
Extensor (unbending muscle) — m. extensor, ōris m
Flexor (bending muscle) — m. flexor, ōris m
foot — pes, pedis m
frontal — frontālis, e
heart — cor, cordis n
index, indicis (index finger) — index, īcis m
lung — pulmo, ōnis m
man — homo, īnis m
mouth — os, oris n
palatinum, palatine — palatīnus, a, um
parietal — parieālis, e
pelvic — pelvīcus, a, um
pharynx — pharynx, yngis m
pollex, pollicis (thumb) — pollex, ĭcis m
Rotator (rotating muscle) — m. rotātor, ōris m
stomach — gaster, tris f
Tensor (straining muscle) — m. tensor, ōris m
tree — arbor, ōris f
trochanter — trochanter, ěris m
ureter — urēter, ěris m
velum (curtain) — velum, i n
vomer — vomer, ěris m
wall — paries, ētis m

Lesson 7
FEMININE GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

§ 43. Systematization of the feminine names in the third declension

All feminine names in the third declension may be systematized in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative ending</th>
<th>Genitive ending</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>Exceptions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-do</td>
<td>-ĭnis</td>
<td>longitūdo, ĭnis f <em>length</em></td>
<td>tendo, ĭnis m <em>tendon, sinew</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-go</td>
<td>-ĭnis</td>
<td>cartilāgo, ĭnis f <em>cartilage</em></td>
<td>margo, ĭnis m <em>border, edge</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-io</td>
<td>-ŏnis</td>
<td>articulatio, ĭnis f <em>joint</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-as</td>
<td>-ātis</td>
<td>cavītas, ātis f <em>cavity</em></td>
<td>atlas, ntis m <em>atlas</em>; pancreas, ātis n <em>pancreas</em>; vas, vasis n <em>vessel</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-is</td>
<td>(parisyllaba)</td>
<td>cutis, is f <em>skin</em></td>
<td>axis, is m <em>axis</em> canālis, is m <em>canal</em> unguis, is m <em>nail</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-is</td>
<td>(imparisyllāba)</td>
<td>pyrāmis, ĭdis f <em>pyramid</em></td>
<td>pulvis, ěris m <em>powder</em> sanguis, ĭnis m <em>blood</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-us</td>
<td>-ūdis</td>
<td>incus, ūdis f <em>incus, little bone of the ear</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consonant + s</td>
<td>consonant +tis</td>
<td>pars, partis f <em>part</em></td>
<td>dens, dentis m <em>tooth</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vowel + x (except -ex)</td>
<td>vowel + -cis</td>
<td>radix, ĭcis f <em>root</em></td>
<td>fornix, ĭcis m <em>fornix, arch</em>; hallux, ūcis m <em>hallux, toe</em>; coccīx, ygis m <em>coccīx, tailbone</em> thorax, ācis m <em>thorax, chest</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consonant + x</td>
<td>consonant + -cis</td>
<td>falk, falcīs f <em>falk, sickle</em></td>
<td>larynx, ngis m <em>larynx</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>consonant + -gis</td>
<td>phalanx, ngis f <em>phalanx</em></td>
<td>pharynx, ngis m <em>pharynx</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 44. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form, translate from Latin into English:
   articulatio capītis costae; axis bulbi externus; basis pyramīdis renālis;
cartilāgo alāris major; cavītas oris propria; cervix dentis canīni; diamĕter pelvis
transversa; margo ciliāris irĭdis; margo liber unguis; margo utĕri dexter; meatus
acusticus auris dextrae; os coccygis; ostium apendīcis vermiformis; pars libēra
gingīvae; plexus venōsus canālis nervi hypoglossi; regio thorācis posterior;
sanguis venōsus et arteriōsus; terminatio nervi cutis; tuberosītas phalangis
distālis; vas lymphatīcum superficiāle

2. Write down the dictionary form, translate into Latin:
   accessory pancreas; anterior arch of atlas; blood vessel of hallux; body of
   nail; canal of great stony nerve; cartilage of nasal septum; cavity of thorax, ciliary
   margin of iris; endocrine part of pancreas; fornix of pharynx; free part of upper
   (lower) limb; greater palatine canal; head of phalanx; inguinal falx or conjoint
   tendon; knee joint; laryngeal vestibule (=vestibule of larynx); neck of the tooth;
   right medial division; ring-shaped part of fibrous vagina; root canal of tooth;
   superior ligament of incus; surface of incisor tooth; tale of pancreas; third molar
   tooth or wisdom tooth; tuberosity of distal phalanx; tympanic cavity of middle ear

§ 45. Vocabulary to Lesson 7

Latin-English dictionary

Nouns of the 1st declension

cauda, ae f — tail
gingīva, ae f — gingiva, gum
tunīca, ae f — membrane

Nouns of the 2nd declension

bulbus, i m — eyeball
diamĕter, tri f — diameter
ostium, i n — orifice
utĕrus, i m — uterus

Nouns of the 3rd declension

appendix, ĭcis f — appendix
auris, is f — ear
cavītas, ātis f — cavity
cervix, īcis f — cervix
coccyx, ygis m — coccyx, coccygeal bone
iris, ĭdis f — iris (central part of the eye)
phalanx, ngis f — phalanx
pyrāmis, ĭdis f — pyramid
sanguis, ĭnis m — blood
terminatio, ōnis f — ending
unguis, is m — nail
Nouns of the 4th declension
meātus, us m — meatus (passage)
plexus, us m — plexus (network, chiefly of veins or nerves)

Adjectives of the 1st group
arteriōsus, a um — arterial
acustīcus, a, um — auditory
canīnus, a um — canine
proprius, a, um — proper
transversus, a, um — transverse
venōsus, ā, um — venous

Adjectives of the 2nd group
alāris, e — alar
ciliāris, e — ciliary
distālis, e — distal
renālis, e — renal
superficiālis, e — superficial
vermiformis, e — vermiform

English-Latin glossary
accessory — accessorius, a, um
blood — sanguis, ĭnis m
cavity — cavĭtas, ātis f
ciliary — ciliāris, e
cconjoint — conjunctīvus, a, um
distal — distālis, e
division — divisio, ŏnis f
ear — auris, is f
docrine — endocrīnus, a, um
falx — falx, falcis f
fornix — fornix, ŏcis m
hallux — hallux, ūcis m
incisor — inciśīvus, a um
incus — incus, ūdis f
inguinal — inguinalis, e
iris — iris, īdis f
larynx — larynx, yngis m
limb — membrum, ĭn
medial — mediālis, e
middle — medius, a, um
molar — molāris, e
molar tooth — dens molāris
nail — unguis, is m
pancreas — pancreas, ātis n
phalanx — phalanx, ngis f
tail — cauda, ae f
third — tertius, a, um
tendon — tendo, īnis m
tympanic — tympanīcus, a, um
wisdom — sapientia, ae f

Lesson 8
NEUTRAL GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

§ 46. SYSTEMATIZATION OF THE NEUTRAL NAMES
OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

All neutral names in the third declension may be systematized in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative ending</th>
<th>Genitive ending</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>Exception</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-al</td>
<td>-ālis</td>
<td>animal, ālis n animal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ar</td>
<td>-āris</td>
<td>calcar, āris n spur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-e</td>
<td>-īs</td>
<td>rete, is n network</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-en</td>
<td>-īnis</td>
<td>abdōmen, īnis n abdōmen</td>
<td>lien, ēnis m spleen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ren, renis m kidney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pecten, īnis m pecten, crest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ma (words of Greek origin)</td>
<td>-ātis</td>
<td>diaphragma, ātis n diaphragm</td>
<td>forma, ae f form;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>gemma, ae f bud;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mamma, ae f breast;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>norma, ae f norm;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>rima, ae f rima, fissure, opening;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>squama, ae f squamous part, scales;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>struma, ae f goiter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ur</td>
<td>ōris</td>
<td>femur, ōris n femur, thigh bone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ūris</td>
<td>sulfur, ūris n sulphur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-us</td>
<td>ĕris</td>
<td>glomus, ĕris n glomus, enlargement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ōris</td>
<td>pectus, ōris n chest crus, cruris n (1. shank, leg; 2. crus, limb (auditory ossicle); 3. bundle (of myocardium))</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uris</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ut</td>
<td>-ītis</td>
<td>caput, ĭtis n (head)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Attention! In the noun hepar the last but one vowel of the Genitive form is short: hepātis. Moreover, the stem of this form contains the consonant “t”.
§ 47. SOME EXPLANATIONS CONCERNING
THE NOUNS HAVING SIMILAR ENDINGS BUT DIFFERENT GENDER
AND DECLENSION

Now, after having analyzed practically all noun endings of the third
decension in the Nominative and the Genitive you can see that sometimes
nouns of different gender and declension may possess the same ending in
the Nominative. We can single out at least three groups of such nouns.

1. The most numerous are the nouns with the final element -us in
the Nominative. Such nouns are found in the 2nd declension and are, as a rule,
masculine, but, as we shall see in the pharmaceutical part of our course,
the names of trees with the ending -us are feminine. Compare:
muscŭlus, i m; sulcus, i m but: Eucalyptus, i f

The ending -us may have the nouns of the feminine and neutral genders
belonging to the 3rd declension:
incus, ūdis f; corpus, ĕris n.
Finally, not only the nouns of the masculine gender (ductus, us m;
processus, us m) have the ending — us in the 4th declension. You should
memorize the noun manus, us f (hand), and in the pharmaceutical part you will
come across the word Quercus, us f (oak).

2. When studying the endings of the neutral gender in the 3rd
decension you could pay attention to the two groups of the nouns with the ending -ma:
1) diaphragma, ĕtis n (nouns of Greek origin) but 2) gemma, ae f (seven
nouns of Latin origin).

3. Finally, let us analyse the nouns with the ending -er. They are not very
numerous and may occur among masculine nouns of the 2nd declension (cancer,
crī m). Some of them may be feminine (diameter, tri f). The nouns of the 3rd
decension with such an ending may be masculine (trochanter, ĕris m), feminine
(mater, trīs f) and neutral (tuber, ĕris n).

Summing up, we have to conclude that a Nominative ending can never give
us complete and correct information about the grammar status of a noun. We
should memorize every noun only in the dictionary form with all its three
elements. Only in this way we can avoid making bad grammar mistakes.

§ 48. EXERCISES

1. Make up grammar agreement of the adjectives with the following nouns:
arcus (dentālis, e; superior, ius; venŏsus, a, um); caput (longus, a, um;
brevis, e; anterior, ius); cartilāgo (accessorius, a, um; major, jus; alāris, e); crus
(ampullāris, e; osseus, a, um; dexter, tra, trum); ligamentum (latus, a, um;
longitudinālis, e; minor, us); margo (sinister, tra, trum; teres, ĕtis; superior, ius);
paries (posterior, ius; internus, a, um; simplex, ĕcis); rete (venŏsus, a, um;
articulāris, e; simplex, ĕcis); tuber (frontālis, e; anterior, ius; major, jus)
2. Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:
calicūlus gustatorius seu gemma gustatoria; corpus adipōsum orbītae; corpus ossis femŏris; crus anterius capsūlae internae; diaphragma pelvis; forāmen mastoideum ossis temporālis; glomus carotĭcum; pecten ossis pubis; porta hepātis; rima vestibūli laryngis; segmentum renis superius; squama ossis occipitālis; systēma respiratorium

3. Write down the dictionary form of each word, translate into Latin:
accessory spleen; anterior region of thigh; body of gallbladder; central nervous system; culmen of the body of cerebellum; dorsal venous network of hand; epigastric region of abdomen; fissure for ligamentum longum of liver; forhead and occiput of head; gastric surface of spleen; hand region; inferior segment of right kidney, lactiferous duct of breast; left crus of diaphragm; mobile liver; optic chiasm; pulvinar of thalamus; rete mirabile; simple membranous crus; squamous part of frontal bone; stroma and parenchyma of thyroid gland; stroma of iris; tegmen of the fourth ventricle; the longest muscle of head

§ 49. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 8

Latin-English vocabulary

1st declension

capsūla, ae f — capsula
gemma, ae f — bud
orbīta, ae f — orbit
porta, ae f — porta (gate of the liver)
rima, ae f — fissure, opening
squama, ae f — squamous part, scales
vesīca, ae f — bladder

2nd declension
calicūlus, i m (gustatorius) — bud
segmentum, i n — segment

3rd declension
crus, cruris n — 1) shank, leg; 2) crus, limb (of auditory ossicle); 3) bundle (of myocardium)
diaphragma, ātis n — diaphragm
femur, ōris n — femur, thigh (bone)
hepar, ātis n — liver
glomus, ěris n — body, enlargement (choroidal), glomus (aortic)
pecten, īnis m — pecten (crest)
pubes, is f — pubis
rete, is n — 1) rete (mirabile); 2) network (dorsal venous network of hand)
systēma, ātis n — system
Adjectives of the 1st group

adipōsus, a, um — fat
carotīcus, a, um — carotid
felleus, a, um (=biliaris, e) — gall (+Noun)
gustatorius, a, um — taste (+Noun)
osseus, a, um — bony
respiratorius, a, um — respiratory

Adjectives of the 2nd group

ampullāris, e — ampullary
biliāris, e (=felleus, a, um) — gall (+Noun)
dentālis, e — dental
longitudinālis, e — longitudinal

English-Latin vocabulary

breast — mamma, ae f
central — centrālis, e
chiasm — chiasma, ātis n
crus — crus, cruris n
culmen — culmen, īnis n
diaphragm — diaphragma, ātis
epigastric — epigastrīcus, a, um
forhead — sincīput, ītis n
fourth — quartus, a, um
gallbladder — vesīca fellea (=vesīca biliāris)
gastric — gastrīcus, a, um
hand — manus, us f
lactiferous — lactifērus, a, um
liver — hepar, ātis n
membranous — membranaceus, a, um
mobile — mobīlis, e
occiput — occīput, ītis n
optic — optīcus, a, um
parenchyma — parenchyma, ātis n
pulvinar — pulvīnar, āris n
rete — rete, is n
spleen — lien, ēnis m
stroma — stroma, ātis n
system — systēma, ātis n
tegmen — tegmen, īnis n
thalamus — thalāmus, i m
thigh — femur, ōris n
ventricle — vertricūlus, i m
Lesson 9

NOMINATIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

§ 50. NOMINATIVE PLURAL ENDINGS OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

The Nominative plural forms for both nouns and adjectives are formed by adding the Nominative plural endings to their stem. These endings, particularly in the 2nd, 3rd and 4th declensions, depend on the gender and declension of nouns and adjectives, as shown in this table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Declension</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Nominative Singular</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Nominative Plural endings</th>
<th>Nominative Plural Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>vertebra thoracica</td>
<td>vertebr-thoracic-</td>
<td>-ae</td>
<td>vertebrae thoracicae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>sulcus dexter</td>
<td>sulc-dextr-</td>
<td>-i</td>
<td>sulci dextri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n</td>
<td>septum latum ganglion oticum</td>
<td>sept-lat-gangli-otic-</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>septa lata ganglia otica</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>homo sapiens</td>
<td>homin-sapient-</td>
<td>-es</td>
<td>homines sapientes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>f</td>
<td>pars commūnis</td>
<td>part-commun-</td>
<td>es</td>
<td>partes commūnes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n</td>
<td>rete mirabīle</td>
<td>ret-mirabil-</td>
<td>-ia</td>
<td>retia mirabilia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>foramen anterius</td>
<td>foramin-anterior-</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>foramīna anteriōra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>processus</td>
<td>process-</td>
<td>-us</td>
<td>processus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n</td>
<td>cornu</td>
<td>corn-</td>
<td>-ua</td>
<td>cornua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>f</td>
<td>facies</td>
<td>faci-</td>
<td>-es</td>
<td>facies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As we can observe, only neutral nouns of the 3rd declension have two variants. The following rules of their ending differentiation are to be memorized.

1. Neutral nouns with the endings -al, -ar, -e in the Nominative singular get the ending -ia:
   animal (Nom. sing.) — animalia (Nom. plur.)
   pulvīnar (Nom. sing.) — pulvinaria (Nom. plur.)
   rete (Nom. sing.) — retia (Nom. plur.)

2. Neutral adjectives of the 3rd declension except for adjectives in the comparative form get the ending -ia:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dictionary form</th>
<th>Neutral form</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Nominative Plural form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acer, cris, cre</td>
<td>acre</td>
<td>acr-</td>
<td>acria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celer, ēris, ēre</td>
<td>celère</td>
<td>celè-</td>
<td>celeria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frontālis, e</td>
<td>frontāle</td>
<td>frontāl-</td>
<td>frontālia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brevis, e</td>
<td>breve</td>
<td>brev-</td>
<td>brevia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sapiens, ntis</td>
<td>sapiens</td>
<td>sapien-</td>
<td>sapientia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impar, āris</td>
<td>impar</td>
<td>impar-</td>
<td>imparia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simplex, īcis</td>
<td>simplex</td>
<td>simplic-</td>
<td>simplicia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Nouns which don’t belong to the first point of the shown above rule as well as adjectives in the comparative form get the ending -a in the Nominative plural: foramen superius (sing.) — foramīna superiōra (plur.) caput minus (sing.) — capīta minōra (plur.)

§ 51. ABBREVIATIONS OF NOMINATIVE PLURAL FORMS USED IN ANATOMICAL TERMS

A certain number of nouns in the anatomical terms is used in the shortened forms. You have to memorize these abbreviations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular form</th>
<th>Plural form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Full form</td>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arteria</td>
<td>A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bursa</td>
<td>B.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forāmen</td>
<td>F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ganglīon</td>
<td>Gangl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glandūla</td>
<td>Gl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ligamentum</td>
<td>Lig.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muscūlus</td>
<td>M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nervus</td>
<td>N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nucleus</td>
<td>Nucl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ramus</td>
<td>R.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vagīna</td>
<td>Vag.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vena</td>
<td>V.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 52. EXERCISES

1. Write down the dictionary form, translate into Latin and then make up the Nominative plural of each word combination:
   cervical surface; coccygeal horn; greater palatine canal; impar ganglion; inferior nuchal line; jugular foramen; posterior tubercle; rete mirabile; sphenoid process; superior nasal meatus; temporal fossa; thoracic region; tympanic cavity; zygomatic bone

2. Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:
   Aa. ciliāres posteriōres breves; cartilagīnes laryngis; Forr. palatīna minōra; Gangll. pelvīca; Gll. thyroideae accessoriae; impressiōnes digitātae seu juga cerebralia; labia oris; Ligg. collateralia; Mm. rotatōres cervīcis; Nn. splanchnīci sacrāles; nomīna anatomīca; Nucll. vestibulāres; orgāna ocūli accessoria; ossa cranii; partes corpōris humāni; plicae transversae recti; radīces craniāles; rami capsŭlae internae; rami cardiāci thoracīci; Rr. dorsāles linguae; regiōnes membrī superiōris; systemāta genitalia viri et femīnae; Vv. hepatīcae dextrae; Vv. temporāles profundae

3. Write down the dictionary form and translate into Latin:
   anterior and posterior divisions; auditory ossicles; blood vessels of retina; borders of the nail; cavities of the body; costal notches; cranial nerves and
sutures; eyebrows and eyelashes; general terms; incisive canals; joints of pelvic
girdle; lesser palatine foramina; minor salivary glands; muscular branches of
common fibular (peroneal) nerve; muscles of back proper; permanent teeth;
planes, lines and regions; posterior ethmoidal cells; renal pyramids; true and
false ribs; transverse folds of rectum; roots, trunks and cords of brachial plexus

§ 53. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 9

Latin-English vocabulary

1st declension

femîna, ae f — woman
plica, ae f — fold
sutūra, ae f — suture

2nd declension

jugum, i n — yoke
ramus, i m — branch
rectum, i n — rectum
vir, i m — man

3rd declension

impressio, ōnis f — impression
nomen, ĭnis n — name

Adjectives of the 1st group

anatomîcus, a, um — anatomical
digitātus, a, um — digitate
humānus, a, um — human
otīcus, a, um — otic

Adjectives of the 2nd group

alveolâris, e — alveolar
cerebrālis, e — cerebral
collaterālis, e — collateral
dorsālis, e — dorsal
genitālis, e — genital

English-Latin glossary

brachial — brachiālis, e
branch — ramus, i m
cell — cellūla, ae f
cord — fascicŭlus, i m
division — divisio, ōnis f
eyebrow — supercilium, i n
eyelash — cilium, i n
false — spurius, a, um
fibular (=peroneal) — fibulâris (=peronēus, a, um)
Lesson 10
GENITIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

§ 54. GENITIVE PLURAL ENDINGS OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

Both nouns and adjectives get the Genitive plural forms by adding the Genitive plural endings to their stem depending mostly on noun and adjective declension, as one may see in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Declension</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Nominative singular</th>
<th>Stems</th>
<th>Genitive plural endings</th>
<th>Genitive plural forms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>vertebra thoracica</td>
<td>vertebr-thoracic-</td>
<td>-ārum</td>
<td>vertebrārum thoracīcum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>sulcus dexter ganglion oticum</td>
<td>sulc-dextr-gangl-otic-</td>
<td>-ōrum</td>
<td>sulcōrum dextrōrum gangliōrum oticōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>canalis brevis dens permanens pars</td>
<td>canal-brev-dent-permanent-part-</td>
<td>-ium</td>
<td>canaliwm breviwm dentium permanentium partium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>f</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
As we can see, masculine, feminine and neutral nouns and adjectives of the third declension have two variants of the endings.

The ending -ium is added to the stems of:
1. Parisyllaba, i.e. the masculine and feminine nouns which have equal number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive: canālis, is m canal; basis, is f base.
2. Masculine, feminine and neutral nouns, if their stem ends with two consonants: dens, dentis m tooth; pars, partis f part; os, ossis n bone.
3. Neutral nouns with the endings -al, -ar, -e in the Nominative singular: anĭmal, ālis n animal; calcar, āris n calcar (spur); rete, is n net, network
4. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the positive degree, see in the table above the adjectives articulāris, e articular; brevis, e short; laterālis, e lateral; permanens, ntis permanent; simplex, īcis simple.

The ending -um is added to the stems of:
1. All nouns which don’t belong to the three first groups of the explained above rules, see, e.g., in the table the nouns margo, ĭnis m border; articulatio, ōnis f joint; forāmen, ĭnis n opening.
2. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the comparative degree, see in the table the adjectives anterior, ius anterior; inferior, ius upper; major, jus major, larger, greater.

Some Latin nouns are used only in plural and their dictionary forms are accordingly represented in the Nominative and Genitive plural: fauces, faucium f fauces; species, ērum (speciērum) f species.

**Attention!** The noun vas, vasis n in singular belongs to the third declension, but in plural — to the second one. Compare: nervi vasis — nerves of a vessel, but nervi vasōrum — nerves of the vessels.
§ 55. EXERCISES

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word and make up Genitive plural form of each word combination:
   anterior tubercle; costal process; floating rib; greater wing; internal base; left spur; lesser opening; lesser sublingual duct; longitudinal ligament; long root; permanent tooth; posterior surface; respiratory region; right crest; sacral horn; short muscle; simple joint; venous network; vertebral canal

2. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate into English:
   ligamenta ossiculorum auditoriorum; medulla ossium flava et rubra; musculi arrectores pilorum; musculi palati et faucium; nervi vasorum lymphaticorum; ostia venarum pulmonalium; plexus cavernosi concharum; processus accessorius vertebrarum lumbalium; situs viscerae inversus; vaginae fibrosae digitorum manus

3. Give the dictionary form and translate into Latin:
   arteries of lower limbs; curvature of the stomach walls; dividing walls of the frontal sinuses; grooves for extensor muscle tendons; heads of the true, false and floating ribs; muscles of auditory ossicles; muscles of soft palate and faucium; nerves and vessels of vessels; nodules of semilunar cusps; sinuses of the venae cavae (Gen. plur.); surface of the permanent teeth; tubercles of thoracic vertebrae (Gen. plur.!!)

§ 56. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 10

Latin-English vocabulary

Nouns of the 1st declension
medulla, ae f — medulla
vagina, ae f (of muscle) — sheath

Nouns of the 2nd declension
ossiculum, i n — ossicle
ostium, i n — opening
palatum, i n — palate
pilus, i m — hair

Nouns of the 3rd declension
m. arrector, oris m — arrector
fauces, ium f — fauces
viscus, ēris n; usually Plur. viscera, um n — viscera, inner organs

Nouns of the 4th declension
manus, us f — hand
situs, us m — site

Adjectives of the 1st group
auditorius, a, um — auditory
cavernosus, a, um — cavernous
fibrösus, a, um — fibrous
flavus, a, um — yellow
inversus, a, um — inverse
ruber, bra, brum — red

Adjectives of the 2nd group
lumbālis, e — lumbar
pulmonālis, e — pulmonary

English-Latin glossary
cavae — cavus, a, um
curvature — curvatūra, ae f
cusp — valvula, ae f
extensor (unbending muscle) — m. extensor, ōris m
false — falsus, a, um
floating — fluctuans, ntis
limb — membrum, i n
nodule — nodulus, i n
ossicle — ossiculum, i n
palate — palatum, i n
permanent — permānens, ntis
respiratory — respiratorius, a, um
semilunar — semilunāris, e
soft — mollis, e
spur — calcar, āris n
stomach — gaster, tris f
true — verus, a, um
venae — vena, ae f
wall — paries, ētis m

Lesson 11
ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS
AND ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS USED
WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

§ 57. ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL ENDINGS

The Latin Accusative case reflects the direct object by answering the questions “Whom? What?” In this function it corresponds to the Russian case called “Винительный” or in German — to the case Akkusativ.

Both nouns masculine and feminine as well as adjectives get the Accusative forms by adding the corresponding endings to their stem, as one may see in the table below. Neutral nouns and adjectives have no special Accusative endings: Accusative singular form corresponds to the form of the Nominative singular and the Accusative plural form — to the form of the Nominative plural:
### Some ending variants are seen in the third declension. Nouns in the Accusative singular can get endings -im or -em. The ending -im should have:

1. Nouns with the ending -sis in the Nominative singular:
   - basis, is f *basis* — basim; dosis, is f *dose* — dosim
2. Nouns pelvis, is f *pelvis* — pelvim; febris, is f *fever* — febrim; tussis, is f *cough* — tussim

§ 58. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ad          | 1) to, toward  
             2) for  
             3) during, in | ad nervum trigeminum  
             ad usum externum  
             ad morbum hypertonícum | to the trigeminal nerve  
             for the external use  
             in the hypertonic disease |
| ante        | before, in front of | ante operatiōnem  
             ante pulmōinem dextrum | before the operation  
             in front of the right lung |
| circum      | (a)round | circum liēnem | around the spleen |
| contra      | for | contra febrim | for the fever |
| in          | in, into, on (when answering the question “where to?”, Russian “куда?”) | in oesophagum  
             in partem dextram  
             in canālem longum | into the oesophagus  
             on the right part  
             in the long canal |
<p>| infra       | below, under | infra cor | below (under) the heart |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>inter</td>
<td>among, between</td>
<td>inter vasa manus \ inter duo ossa</td>
<td>among the vessels of the hand between two bones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intra</td>
<td>inside</td>
<td>intra thorācem</td>
<td>inside the thorax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>per</td>
<td>1) through, via \ 2) by (means of)</td>
<td>per canālem opticum \ per ligamenta</td>
<td>through (via) the optic canal \ by (means of) the ligaments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post</td>
<td>after, behind</td>
<td>post operationem \ post costam</td>
<td>after the operation behind the rib</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sub</td>
<td>under (when answering the question “where to?”, Russian “куда?”)</td>
<td>sub scapūlam dextram \ sub ganglion \ submandibulāre</td>
<td>under the right shoulder blade \ under the submandibular ganglion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>super, supra</td>
<td>above</td>
<td>super (supra) marginem \ superius \ supra (super) labium</td>
<td>above the left margin \ above the upper lip</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 59. EXERSICES

1. **Give the dictionary form of each word, make up forms of the Nominative singular, Accusative singular and plural:**
   - anterior margin; ascending artery; external base; frontal surface; greater pelvis; hepatic duct; left lung; lesser horn; lymphatic vessel; nasal bone; right part; respiratory system; short nerve; vertebral canal

2. **Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into English:**
   - adĭtus ad antrum; ante operationem difficĭlem; ante pulmonem dextrum; circum ocŭlum dextrum; in canālem dentis incisivi; in pariĕtem gastris; inter ossa; intra venam faciālem; in musculos laryngis; per os; per pelvim minōrem; per rectum; post partum; rami ad medullam oblongātam; sub cor; sub ligamenta flava

3. **Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into Latin:**
   - above the left lung; after death; among the incisors; before and after childbirth; between the leg bones; by means of the long canal; for cough; for internal (external) use; into the deep vein; inside the stomach artery; on the superior surface; round the mouth; through the abdomen; under the right kidney; via the common carotid artery

§ 60. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 11

**Latin-English vocabulary**

**Prepositions used with the Accusative**

ad — 1) to; 2) for; 3) during
ante — before, in front of
circum — around, round
contra — against
in (to the question “where to?”, Russian “куда?”) — in, into, on
infra — below, under
intra — among, between (two objects)
per — through, via 2) by (means of)
post — after (time), behind (place)
sub (to the question “where to?”), Russian “куда?”) — under
super, supra — above, over

Other words
aditus, us m — aditus
antrum, i n — antrum, cave
auricularis, e — auriculare
difficilis, e — difficult
flavus, a, um — yellow
medulla, ae f — medulla
oblongatus, a, um — oblongata (medulla)

English-Latin vocabulary
Prepositions
above — super, supra
after — post
among (more than two objects) — inter
around — circum
before — ante
behind — post
between (two objects) — inter
by (means of) — per
during — ad
for — ad
in — in (to the question “where to?”)
in front of — ante
inside — intra
into — in (to the question “where to?”)
on — in (to the question “where to?”)
round — see around
to — ad
through — per
under — infra, sub (to the question “where to?”)

Other words
ascending — ascendens, ntis
childbirth — partus, us m
cough — tussis, is f
death — mors, mortis f
leg — pes, pedis m
operation — operatio, ōnis f
use — usus, us m

Lesson 12

ABLATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.
PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE

§ 61. ABLATIVE AND ITS FORMATION

Ablative is the Latin case reflecting different circumstances and conditions which characterize the indirect object (mood of the action, time, place, reason and so on).

Both nouns and adjectives get the Ablative forms by adding the corresponding endings to their stems, as one may see in the table below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dec- lension</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Nominative singular</th>
<th>Abl. sing. ending</th>
<th>Ablative singular form</th>
<th>Abl. plur. ending</th>
<th>Ablative plural form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>vena cava</td>
<td>-ā</td>
<td>vena cava</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>venis cavis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>ramus dexter</td>
<td>-o</td>
<td>ramo dextro</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>ramis dextris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n</td>
<td>ganglion oticum</td>
<td>-o</td>
<td>ganglio otico</td>
<td>-is</td>
<td>gangliis oticus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>septum longum</td>
<td></td>
<td>septo longo</td>
<td></td>
<td>septis longis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>margo anterior</td>
<td>-e (-i)</td>
<td>marginē anteriōrem</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td>marginībus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>canālis nutriens</td>
<td></td>
<td>canāle nutrienti</td>
<td></td>
<td>canalībus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>f</td>
<td>pars laterālis</td>
<td>-e (-i)</td>
<td>parte laterāli</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td>partībus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>basis simplex</td>
<td></td>
<td>basi simplīci</td>
<td></td>
<td>basībus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n</td>
<td>rete capillāre</td>
<td>-e (-i)</td>
<td>reti capillāri</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td>retībus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>crus posterius</td>
<td></td>
<td>crure posteriōre</td>
<td></td>
<td>crurībus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>processus</td>
<td>-u</td>
<td>processu</td>
<td>-ibus</td>
<td>processībus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n</td>
<td>cornu</td>
<td>-u</td>
<td>cornu</td>
<td></td>
<td>cornibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>facies</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>facie</td>
<td>-ēbus</td>
<td>faciēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some ending variants are seen in the third declension. Nouns and adjectives in the Ablative singular can get endings -e or -i.

The ending -i is added to the stem of:

1. Neutral nouns with the endings -al, -ar, -e in the Nominative singular (we have already mentioned these nouns in the previous lessons): ānis n — animāli; calcar, āris n — calcāri; rete, is n — reti.

2. Four feminine nouns: pelvis, is f pelvis — pelvi; febris, is f fever — febri; tussis, is f cough — tussi.
3. Feminine nouns with the ending -sis: basis, is f base — basi.
4. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the positive degree as well as participles: brevis, e — brevi; capillāris, e — capillāri; simplex, īcis — simplici; fluctuans, ntis — fluctuanti.
   The ending -e is added to the stem of:
   1. All nouns which don’t belong to the first three groups of the explained above rules, — see, e. g., in the table the nouns canālis, margo, pars, crus.
   2. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the comparative degree, — see in the table the adjective anterior, ius and posterior, ius.

§ 62. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proposition</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a, ab (before a vowel)</td>
<td>from</td>
<td>a sulco rhināli</td>
<td>from rhinal sulcus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cum</td>
<td>with</td>
<td>cum nervo faciāli</td>
<td>with facial nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de</td>
<td>about</td>
<td>de ossibus crani</td>
<td>about the skull bones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e (ex) 1) from (about the movement from within)</td>
<td>e canāle sacrāli</td>
<td>from the sacral canal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) of, from (about material)</td>
<td>ex fructūbus Rosae</td>
<td>from the abdomen cavity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>(when answering the question “where?”) in, on</td>
<td>in cavitāte pleurāli</td>
<td>in the pleural cavity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro</td>
<td>for</td>
<td>pro reti venōso</td>
<td>for venous network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sine</td>
<td>without</td>
<td>sine pancreāte accessorio</td>
<td>without accessory pancreas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sub</td>
<td>(when answering the question “where?”) under</td>
<td>sub cute capītis</td>
<td>under the skin of head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sub narcōsi locāli</td>
<td>under a local anesthesia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 63. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, make up the forms of the Ablative singular and plural:
   accessory pancreas; continued fever; bony tissue; canine tooth; floating rib; inner base; left canal; lesser pelvis; long spur; lymphatic vessel; right region; sacral horn; short nerve; simple joint
2. Give the dictionary form of each word; translate from Latin into English:
   ab angūlo inferiōre scapūlae; a crista capītis costae; cum febri continua; de structūra partium corpōris humāni; de termīnis generalībus; glandūlæ sine ductībus; in facie unguis; in regionībus membri superiōris; pro reti venōso;
sanguis ex vena pro analўsi; sub muscŭlis facialĭbus; sub tunĭca musculāri; tunĭca e textu connectivo

3. *Give the dictionary form of each word; translate from English into Latin:*

about the abdominal muscles; a medicine from the forest plants; for external use; for nervous system; from the head to the feet; from the surface of knee; in the heart artery; in the thoracic vein; on the nose skin; under a local (general) anesthesia; with a wandering kidney; without upper wisdom teeth

§ 64. **VOCABULARY TO LESSON 12**

**Latin-English vocabulary**

**Prepositions used with the Ablative**

*a, ab — from*

*cum — with*

*de — about, of*

*e, ex — from, of*

*in (when answering the question “where?”) — in, on*

*pro — for*

*sine — without*

*sub (when answering the question “where?”) — under*

**Other words**

*connectīvus, a, um — connective*

*continuus, a, um — continued*

*faciālis, e — facial*

*generālis, e — general*

*glandŭla, ae f — gland*

*humānus, a, um — human*

*musculāris, e — muscular*

*scapŭla, ae f — scapula*

*structūra, ae f — structure*

*termīnus, i m — term*

*tunīca, ae f — layer, coat*

**English-Latin vocabulary**

*anesthesia — anaesthesia, ae f*

*continued — continuus, a, um*

*forest — silvestris, e*

*general — generālis, e*

*local — locālis, e*

*medicine — medicamentum, i n*

*plant — planta, ae f*

*wandering — migrans, ntis*
Lesson 13
PREFIXES IN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

§ 65. PREFIXATION IN THE WORD BUILDING

Prefixation is the way of word building by adding prefixes to the stem of nouns or adjectives. As a result new meanings of the word are received in which any additional circumstances characteristic of the noun or adjective arise, mainly in respect of space if it concerns anatomical terms, e. g.:

- brachium, i n (brachium) + ante (before) → antebrachium, i n — antebrachium
- cervicālis, e (cervical) + endo (within) → endocervicālis, e — endocervical
- cutaneus, a, um (cutaneous) + sub (under) → subcutaneus, a, um — subcutaneous

§ 66. PREFIXES IN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

Both Greek and Latin prefixes are widely used in anatomical terms. Some of them have the same meaning and in these cases choosing the prefix depends only on tradition of using this or that word in a certain term. In other cases, Greek and Latin prefixes don’t duplicate the meaning of each other. According to this connection, we place Greek and Latin prefixes in two tables.

Greek and Latin prefixes with identical meaning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Greek prefix</th>
<th>Latin prefix</th>
<th>Latin examples and English equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>above, over</td>
<td>epi-</td>
<td>super-</td>
<td>epigastrium, i n — epigastrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>supra-</td>
<td>superficial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>suprarenālis</td>
<td>suprarenal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>below, under</td>
<td>hypo-</td>
<td>infra-</td>
<td>hypoglossus, a um — hypoglossal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sub-</td>
<td>infraorbitālis, e — infraorbital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sublinguālis, e — sublingual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after, behind</td>
<td>meta-</td>
<td>post-, retro-</td>
<td>metatarsus, i m — metatarsus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>postcavālis, e — postcaval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>retromandibulāris, e — retromandibular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>within</td>
<td>en-, endo-</td>
<td>intra-</td>
<td>encephālon, i n — brain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>endocervicālis, e — endocervical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>intracellulāris, e — intracellular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outside, of</td>
<td>ecto-, exo-</td>
<td>extra</td>
<td>ectoderma, ātis n — ectoderm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>exoskelēton, i n — exoskeleton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>extracellulāris, e — extracellular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>between or the</td>
<td>dia-, di-,</td>
<td>inter-</td>
<td>diastēma, ātis n — diastema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>middle</td>
<td>meso-,</td>
<td></td>
<td>mesoderma, ātis n — mesoderm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>Greek prefix</td>
<td>Latin prefix</td>
<td>Latin examples and English equivalents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>mes-</td>
<td></td>
<td>mesencephālon, i n — mesencephalon, the midbrain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>intercōstālis, e — intercostal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>together, joined</td>
<td>syn-</td>
<td>col-, com-, con-, cor-</td>
<td>synostōsis, is f — synostosis; symphōsis, is f — symphysis; commissūra, ae f — commissure; collaterālis, e — collateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>connectīvus, a, um — connective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>m. corrugātor, ōris m — corrugator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not, without</td>
<td>a-, an- (before a vowel)</td>
<td>in-, im-, ir-</td>
<td>azygos (undeclinable) — azygous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>anomalūmus, a, um — innominate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>insensibīlis, e — insensitive; impar, āris — impar; irregulāris, e — irregular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>against, opposite</td>
<td>anti-</td>
<td>contra-</td>
<td>antitrāgus, i m — antitragus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>anticorpus, āris n — antibody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>contralaterālis, e — contralateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from, away from</td>
<td>apo-</td>
<td>a-, ab-</td>
<td>apocrīnus, a, um — apocrine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>apophōsis, is f — apophysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>m. abductor, ōris m — abductor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>around, round</td>
<td>peri-</td>
<td>circum-</td>
<td>pericardium, i n — pericardium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>circumorālis, e — circumoral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>through</td>
<td>dia-</td>
<td>per-</td>
<td>diaphragma, ātis n — diaphragm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>perspiratio, ōnis f — perspiration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out, out of</td>
<td>ec-, ex-</td>
<td>e-, ex-</td>
<td>eccrīnus, a, um — eccrine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>effērens, ntis f — efferent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>exostōsis, is f — exostosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>excretorius, a, um — excretory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Greek and Latin prefixes without mutual semantic duplication**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek prefix</th>
<th>Latin prefix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Latin examples and English equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ad-, ac-, af-, ap-</td>
<td>adition, movement nearer</td>
<td>adrenālis, e — adrenal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>accessorius, a, um — accessory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>affērens, ntis f — afferent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>appendix, īcis f — appendix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de-</td>
<td>1. removing 2. downward</td>
<td>m. detrūsor, ōris m — detrusor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>m. depressor, ōris m — depressor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dis-, dif-, di-</td>
<td>spreading</td>
<td>disseminātus, a, um — disseminated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>diffūsus, a, um — diffuse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>m. dilatator, ōris m — dilator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-, im-</td>
<td>moving inward</td>
<td>infundībulum, i n — infundibulum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>impressio, ōnis f — impression</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Greek prefix | Latin prefix | Meaning | Latin examples and English equivalents
--- | --- | --- | ---
– | re- | again or repeated action | reactio, ōnis f — reaction
 |  |  | recessus, us m — recessus, recess
 |  |  | reuniens, ntis — reunient
para- |  | beside, near | paracervix, icis f — paracervix
 |  |  | paranasālis, e — paranasal

§ 67. GREEK AND LATIN NUMERALS AS PREFIXES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Greek prefix</th>
<th>Latin prefix</th>
<th>Latin examples and English equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| one | mono- | uni- | mononucleāris, e — mononuclear
 |  |  | unicellulāris, e — unicellular
| two | di- | bi- | digastricus, a um — digastric
 |  |  | bifurcatio, ōnis f — bifurcation
| three | tri- | tri- | trigōnum, i n — trigonum, triangle, trigone
 |  |  | trigeminus, a, um — trigeminus
| four | tetra- | quadri- | tetrāpus, ōdos — tetrapus
 |  |  | quadriceps, ipītis — quadriceps
| half | hemi- | semi- | hemispherium, i n — hemisphere
 |  |  | semicanālis, is m — semicanal

§ 68. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into English taking into consideration the meaning of prefixes:
- adhesio interthalamīca; apparātus respiratorius seu systēma respiratorium;
circumferentia articulāris; dentes decidui; eminentia collaterālis; fibrae
periventriculāres; glandūla parotidea accessoria; impressio suprarenālis; lamella
circumferentiālis externa; ligamenta metacarpalia interossea; mesocōlon
transversum; muscŭlus bipennātus; ossa metatarsi; plexus submucōsus;
processus intrajugulāris; sectiōnes mesencephalīci; spatium retropharyngēum;
substantia perforāta interpedunculāris; symphўsis intervertebrālis; synchondrōsis
intraocipitālis; tractus paraventriculohypophysiālis; tragus et antitragus
auricŭlae; trigōnum cervicāle anterius; vena retromandibulāris

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and fill in the gaps with the most suitable Latin prefixes using, if necessary, Atlas of Human Anatomy:
- arteria …currens; arteria …flexa scapŭlae; canālis …circulāris; ligamenta
…capsularia; muscŭlus …pressor angūli oris; muscŭlus …pennātus; nervus
…dūcens; orgāna ocūli …cessoria; recessus …hepatici; vas sanguineum
…fŏrans; zona …certa

3. Give the dictionary form of each word and fill in the gaps with the most suitable Greek prefixes using, if necessary, Atlas of Human Anatomy:
- … cōlon descendens; …condyλus laterālis; fossa …helīcis; …gōnum
habenūlae …encephali; glandūla …statīca; glandūlae …crinae; muscŭlus
…gastrīcus; plexus … gastrīcus; recessus … tympanīcus; regio …chondriāca;
... spherium cerebelli; spatium ...pharyngēum; tractus ... encephalīcus nervi trigemīni

4. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:
accessory pancreatic duct; common interosseous artery; external intercostal muscles; fascia of forearm; interclavicular ligament; intermandibular suture; interlobar artery; intraglandular lymphatic node; interosseal nerves of leg; parapharyngeal space; paravesical fossa; preoccipital noč; semilunar folds of colon; submandibular gland; supraorbital veins; supracleural membrane

§ 69. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 13

Latin-English glossary

Nouns of the 1st declension
auricūla, ae f — auricle; pinna
circumpherentia, ae f — circumference
eminentia, ae f — eminence
lamella, ae f — lamella

Nouns of the 2nd declension
antebrachium, i n — antebračium, forearm
antitrāgus, i m — antitragus
diencephālon, i n — diencephalon
hemispherium, i n — hemisphere
mesencephālon, i n — mesencephalon
mesocōlon, i n — mesocolon
metatarsus, i m — metatarsus
spatium, i n — space
tragus, i m — tragus
trigōnum, i n — trigone

Nouns of the 3rd declension
adhesio, ōnis f — adhesion
antihēlix, ĭcis f; anthēlix, ĭcis f — antihelix (anthelix)
symphōsis, is f — symphysis
synchondrōsis, is f — synchondrosis
syndesmōsis, is f — syndesmosis

Nouns of the 4th declension
apparātus, us m — apparatus
recessus, us m — recess

Adjectives of the 1st and 2nd declensions
bipennātus, a, um — bipennate
biventer, tra, trum — two-bellied
deciduus, a, um — deciduous
digitātus, a, um — digitate
dendocrīnus, a, um — endocrine
epitympanicus, a, um — epitympanic
incertus, a, um — incerta(zona)
interosseus, a, um — interosseal, interosseous
interthalamicus, a, um — interthalamic
hypochondriacus, a, um — hypochondriac
hypogastricus, a, um — hypogastric
mesencephalicus, a, um — mesencephalic

**Adjectives of the 3rd declension**
circumferentiālis, e — circumferential
collaterālis, e — collateral
extracapsulāris — extracapsular
interpedunculāris, e — interpeduncular
intervertebrālis, e — intervertebral
intragulāris, e — intrajugular
intraoccipitālis, e — intraoccipital
metacarpālis, e — metacarpal
pancreaticus, a, um — pancreatic
paraventriculohypophysiālis, e — paraventriculohypophysial
periventriculāris, e — periventricular
retromandibulāris, e — retromandibular
semicirculāris, e — semicircular
suprarenālis, e — suprarenal

**English-Latin vocabulary**
forearm — antebrachium, i n
interclavicular — interclaviculāris, e
interlobar — interlobāris, e
intermandibular — intermandibulāris, e
interosseous — interosseus, a, um
intercostal — intercostālis, e
intraglandular — intraglandulāris, e
parapharyngeal — parapharyngeālis, e
paravesical — paravesicālis, e
preoccipital — preoccipitālis, e
semilunar — semilunāris, e
submandibular — submandibulāris, e
supraorbital — supraorbitālis, e
supracleural — supracleuralis, e
§ 70. Model (Sample) of the Final Test in Anatomical Terminology

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into English:
   1) paries anterior gastris; 2) vestibulum oris; 3) margo liber unguis;
   4) pecten ossis pubis; 5) partes corpōris humāni; 6) plexus cavernōsi conchārum;
   7) ostia venārum pulmonalium.

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:
   1) deep vein of the right leg; 2) teres minor muscle; 3) groove for inferior
   petrosal sinus; 4) surface of incisor tooth; 5) planes, lines and regions; 6) heads
   of the true, false and floating ribs; 7) eyebrows and eyelashes.

3. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:
   1) by means of the long canal; 2) through the abdomen; 3) with a wandering
   kidney; 4) for nervous system; 5) glands without ducts.

To cope with this final test you have to review (revise) thoroughly every home task because all the terms of this test have been taken from your exercises. But the most effective way to success is your thorough learning and preparation for every lesson during the time of your studies.
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

a, ab (Abl) from
accessorius, a, um accessory
acusticus, a, um auditory
ad (Acc.) 1) to; 2) for; 3) during
adhesio, ōnis f adhesion
adipōsus, a, um fat
aditus, us m aditus
ala, ae f wing
alāris, e alar
alveolāris, e alveolar
ampullāris, e ampullary
analŭsis, is f analysis
anatomĭcus, a, um anatomical
angŭlus, i m angle
ante (Acc.) 1) before (time);
2) in front of (place)
antebrahium, i n antebrachium,
forearm
anterior, ius anterior
antihĕlix, ĭcis f; anthĕlix,
īcis f antihelix (anthelix)
antitrāgus, i m antitragus
antrum, i n antrum, cave
apex, įcis m apex, top
apparātus, us m apparatus
appendix, įcis f appendix
arachnoideus, a um arachnoid
arbor, ĕris f tree
arbor vitae arbor vitae
arcus, us m arch
arteria, ae f artery
arteriōsus, a um arterial
articulāris, e articular
articulatio, ōnis f joint
atlas, ntis m atlas (the first cervical
vertebra)
auditorius, a, um auditory
auricūla, ae f auricle; pinna
auricularis, e auricular
auris, is f ear
axis, is m axis

B

basis, is f base
biliāris, e (=felleus, a, um) gall
(+noun)
bipennātus, a, um bipennate
biventer, tra, trum two-bellied
brevis, e short
bulbus, i m (ocŭli) eyeball

cadāver, ĕris n cadaver (dead body)
calicŭlus, i m (gustatorius) bud
-canālis, is m canal
cancer, cri m cancer
canīnus, a um (dens) canine (tooth)
capsŭla, ae f capsule
caput, ĭtis n head
卡ardiācus, a, um cardiac
caroticus, a, um carotid
cartilăgo, ĭnis f cartilage
cauda, ae f tail
cavernōsus, a, um cavernous
cavītas, ātis f cavity
celer, ĕris, ĕre rapid, quick (pulse)
cerebellum, i n cerebellum
cerebrālis, e cerebral
cervicālis, e cervical
cervix, įcis f cervix
ciliāris, e ciliary
circum (Acc.) around, round
circumferentia, ae f circumference
circumferentia, ae f circumference
coccygēus, a, um coccygeal
coccyx, ygis m coccyx, coccygeal
bone
cochleāris, e cochlear
collaterālis, e collateral
communicans, ntis communicative
compositus, a, um complex
concha, ae f concha (shellshaped hole)
connectīvus, a, um connective
continuus, a, um continued
contra (Acc.) against, for (cough)
cor, cordis n heart
cornu, us n horn, hornshaped process
corpus, ōris n body
cortex, icis m cortex (crust)
costa, ae f rib
costālis, e costal
cranīalis, e cranial
cranium, i n skull
crista, ae f crest
crus, cruris n 1) shank, leg;
   2) crus, limb (of auditory ossicle);
   3) bundle (of myocardium)
cum (Abl.) with
cutis, is f skin

de (Abl.) about, of
deciduus, a, um deciduous
dens, dentis m tooth
dens canīnus canine tooth
dens deciduus deciduous tooth
dens incisīvus incisor tooth
dens molāris molar tooth
dens permānens permanent tooth
dens premolāris premolar tooth
dens sapientiae wisdom tooth
dentālis, e dental
dexter, tra, trum right
diamēter, tri f diameter
diaphragma, ātis n diaphragm
diencephālon, i n diencephalon
difficīlis, e difficult
digastrīcus, a um digastric
digitātus, a, um digitate
digitus, i m finger, toe
distālis, e distal
dorsālis, e dorsal
ductus, us m duct
duodēnum, i n duodenum
dura mater dura mater
   (the outermost meninx of the brain)
durus, a, um solid
E
e, ex (Abl.) from, of
eminentia, ae f eminence
encephālon i n brain
endocrīnus, a, um endocrine
et and
epitympanīcus, a, um epitympanic
externus, a, um external
extracapsulāris extracapsular
F
faciālis, e facial
facies, ēi f face, surface
fascia, ae f fascia
fascia lata fascia lata
fauces, ium f fauces
febris, is f fever
felleus, a, um (= biliaris, e) gall
   (+noun)
femīna, ae f woman
femur, ōris n femur, thigh (bone)
fibra, ae f fibre
fibrōsus, a, um fibrous
flavus, a, um yellow
forāmen, īnis n opening
fossa, ae f fossa (little hole)
frontālis, e fossa (little hole)
frontālis, e frontal
G
ganglion, i n nervous node
gaster, tris f stomach
gemma, ae f bud
generālis, e general
genitālis, e genital
gingīva, ae f gingiva, gum
glandūla, ae f gland
glomus, ěris n a cluster of blood vessels, glomus
gustatorius, a, um taste (+noun)

H
hemispherium, i n hemisphere
hepar, ātis n liver
hepatīcus, a, um
homo, īnis m man
humānus, a, um human
hyoideus, a, um hyoid, sublingual (bone)
hypochondriācus, a, um hypochondriac
hypogastricus, a, um hypogastric
hypoglossus, a, um hypoglossal, sublingual (nerve)

I
iliācus, a, um iliac
impar, āris impar, unpaired
impressio, ōnis f impression
imus, a, um imus (ima), the lowest in (Acc., when answering the question “where to?”), Russian “куда?”) in, into, on
in (Abl., when answering the question “where?”), Russian “где?”) in, on
incertus, a, um incerta (zona)
incisīvus, a, um (dens) incisor
incisūra, ae f incisure, slit or notch
inferior, ius inferior
infra (Acc.) below, under
inter (Acc.) among, between (two objects)
interclaviculāris, e interclavicular
intercostālis, e intercostal
interlobāris, e interlobar
intermandibulāris, e intermandibular
internus, a, um internal
interosseus, a, um interosseal, interosseous
interpedunculāris, e interpeduncular
interthalamīcus, a, um interthalamic
intervertebrālis, e intervertebral
intra (Acc.) inside, in
intraglandulāris, e intraglandular
inrajugulāris, e intrajugular
intraoccipitālis, e intraoccipital
inversus, a, um inverse
iris, īdis f iris (central part of the eye)

J
jugum, i n yoke

L
labium, i n lip
lamella, ae f lamella
larynx, yngis m larynx
latus, a, um broad
liber, ėra, ėrum free
ligamentum, i n ligament
lingua, ae f tongue
longissīmus, a, um the longest
longitudinālis, e longitudinal
longus, a, um long
lumbālis, e lumbar
lymphaticus, a, um lymphatic

M
magnus, a, um large (vein), magnus (m. adductor), great (nerve)
major, jus major, greater, larger
mandibūla, ae f lower jaw, mandible
manus, us f hand
margo, īnis m margin, border
massēter, ėris m see below
m. masseter
mastoideus, a, um mastoid
mater, tris f mater (cerebral coat)
maxilla, ae f maxilla, upper jaw
meâtus, us m meatus (passage)
medulla, ae f medulla
membrum, i n limb
mesencephálus, a, um
mesencephalic
mesencephálon, i n mesencephalon
mesocōlon, i n mesocolon
metacarpālis, e metacarpal
metatarsus, i m metatarsus
minor, us minor, lesser, smaller
minimus, a, um the least, minimus
molāris, e (dens) molar (tooth)
musculāris, e muscular
muscūlus, i m muscle
m. adductor, ōris m adductor
(bringing muscle)
m. arrector, ōris m arrector
(muscle elevating hair)
m. levātor, ōris m levator
(elevating muscle)
m. massēter, ēris m masseter
m. pronātor, ōris m pronator
(muscle turning the forearm)
m. rotātor, ōris m rotātor
m. sphincter, ēris m sphincter
(compressing muscle)
m. tensor, ōris m tensor
(straining muscle)

N
nasālis, e nasal
nasus, i m nose
nervus, i m nerve
nucleus, i m nucleus
nomen, ĭnis n name

O
oblongātus, a, um rather long
occipitālis, e occipital
ocūlus, i m eye
operatio, ōnis f operation
orbīta, ae f orbit
orgānon, i n organ
os, oris n mouth
os, ossis n bone
osseus, a, um bony
ossicūlum, i n ossicle
ostium, i n opening, orifice
otīcus, a, um otic

P
palatīnus, a, um palatine
palātum, i n palate
palpēbra, ae f eyelid
pancreāticus, a, um pancreatic
parapharyngeālis, e parapharyngeal
paraventriculohypophysīalis, e
paraventriculohypophysial
paravesicālis, e paravesical
paries, ētis m wall
parotideus, a, um parotid
pars, partis f part
partus, us m childbirth, delivery
parvus, a, um little, small
pecten, īnis m pecten (crest)
pelvīcus, a, um pelvic
pelvis, is f pelvis
per (Acc.) 1) through, via;
2) by (means of)
periventriculāris, e periventricular
permānens, entis (dens) permanent
(tooth)
pes, pedis m foot
petrōsus, a, um stony
phalanx, ngis f phalanx
pius, a, um (mater) pia (mater)
pilus, i m hair
planta, ae f sole
plexus, us m plexus (network,
chiefly of veins or nerves)
plica, ae f fold
porta, ae f porta (gate of the liver)
post (Acc.) after (time),
behind (place)
posterior, ius posterior
premolaris, e (dens) premolar
(tooth)
preoccipitalis, e preoccipital
pro (Abl.) for
processus, us m process
profundus, a, um deep
proprius, a, um proper
pubes, is f pubis
pulmo, ōnis m lung
pulmonalis, e pulmonary
pulsus, us m pulse
pupilla, ae f pupil
pyrāmis, idis f pyramid

Q
quadrātus, a, um square, quadratus
(muscle), quadratus (pronator)

R
radix, ūcis f radix, root
ramus, i m branch
recessus, us m recess
rectum, i n rectum
regio, ōnis f region
ren, renis m kidney
renālis, e renal
respiratorius, a, um respiratory
rete, is n 1) rete (mirabile);
2) network (dorsal venous of hand)
retromandibularis, e
retromandibular
retropharyngēus, a, um
retropharyngeal
rima, ae f fissure, opening
ruber, bra, brum red

S
sacrālis, e sacral
sanguis, īnis m blood
saphēnus, a, um saphenous
sapiens, ntis intelligent, clever
sapientia, ae f wisdom
scapula, ae f scapula, shoulder blade
sectio, ōnis f section
segmentum, i n segment
seemīcirculāris, e semicircular
semīlunāris, e semilunar
septum, i n septum, dividing wall
seu or
simplex, īcis simple
sine (Abl.) without
sinister, tra, trum left
sinus, us m sinus, hollow curvature
or cavity
situs, us m site
spatium, i n space
spina, ae f spine
spinālis, e spina
splanchnicus, a, um splanchnic
squama, ae f squamous part, scales
sternum, i n sternum, breastbone
structūra, ae f structure
sub (Acc., when answering
the question “where to?”
Russian “куда?”; Abl.,
when answering the question
“where?” Russian “где?”) under
sublinguālis e sublingual (except
for nerve and bone)
submandibularis, e submandibular
submucōsus, a, um submucous
substantia, ae f substance
sulcus, i m sulcus, furrow or groove
super, supra (Acc.) above, over
superficiālis, e superficial
superior, ius superior
supraorbital supraorbitālis, e
suprapleuralis, e suprapleural
suprarenālis, e suprarenal
suprēmus, a, um supreme, the highest
sutura, ae f suture
symphψsis, is f symphysis
synchondrōsis, is f synchondrosis
syndesmōsis, is f syndesmosis
systēma, ātis n system
tumor, ōris m tumor (swelling, growth)
tunīca, ae f 1) layer, coat; 2) membrane
tympanīcus, a, um tympanic

U
unguis, is m nail
utērus, i m uterus

V
vagīna, ae f (of muscle) vagina, sheath
vas, vasis n vessel
vena, ae f vein
venōsus, a, um venous
venter, tris m belly (of the muscle)
vermiformis, e vermiform
vertēbra, ae f vertebra
vertebrālis, e vertebral
vesīca, ae f bladder
vestibulāris, e vestibular
vestibūlum, i n vestibule
vir, i m man
viscus, ēris n; usually Plur. viscēra, um n viscera, inner organs
vita, ae f life
vomer, ēris m vomer
### ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

**A**
- **abdomen** abdōmen, ìnis n
- **abdominal** abdominālis, e
- **about** de (Abl.)
- **above** super, supra (Acc.)
- **accessory** accessorius, a, um
- **adductor** (muscūlus) adductor, ōris m
- **after** post (Acc.)
- **among** (more than two objects) inter (Acc.)
- **anesthesia** anaesthesia, ae f
- **angle** angūlus, i m
- **anterior** anterior, ius
- **apex, top** apex, įcis m
- **arch** arcus, us m
- **around** circum (Acc.)
- **artery** arteria, ae f
- **articular** artículāris, e
- **ascending** ascendens, ntis
- **auricular** auricularis, e
- **atlas** atlas,antis m
- **auditory** auditorius, a, um

**B**
- **back** dorsum, i n
- **base** basis, is f
- **before** ante (Acc.)
- **behind** post (Acc.)
- **between (two objects)** inter (Acc.)
- **blood** sanguis, įnis m
- **body** corpus, ōris n
- **bone** os, ossis n
- **bony** osseus, a, um
- **border** margo, įnis m
- **brachial** brachiālis, e
- **brain** cerebrum, i n
- **branch** ramus, i m
- **breast** mamma, ae f
- **broadest** latissimus, a, um
- **bronchial** bronchiālis, e
- **bursa (pouch, sac)** bursa, ae f
- **by** (means of) per (Acc.)

**C**
- **canal** canālis, is m
- **cancer, cri** m cancer
- **canine (tooth)** canīnus, a, um (dens)
- **cardiac** cardīacus, a, um
- **carotid** carotīcus, a, um
- **cartilage** cartīlāgo, įnis f
- **cava, cavae** cavus, a, um
- **cavity** cavītas, ātis f
- **cell** cellūla, ae f
- **central** centrālis, e
- **cerebellum** cerebellum, I n
- **cervical** cervicālis, e
- **cervix** cervix, įcis f
- **chiasm** chiasma, tis n
- **childbirth** partus, us m
- **ciliary** ciliāris, e
- **coccygeal** coccygēus, a, um
- **colon** colon, i n
- **column** columna, ae f
- **common** commūnis, e
- **complex** composītus, a, um
- **conjoint** conjunctīvus, a, um
- **constrictor** (compressing muscle) muscūlus constrictor, ōris m
- **continued** continuus, a, um
- **cord** fascicūlus, i m
- **costal** costālis, e
- **cough** tussis, is f
- **cranial** craniālis, e
- **crest** crista, ae f
- **crus** crus, cruris n
- **culmen** culmen, įnis n
- **curvature** curvatūra, ae f
- **cusp** valvūla, ae f
D
deadth mors, mortis f
deep profundus, a, um
dental dentālis, e
depressor (lowing muscle) musculus
deressor, ōris m
diaphragm diaphragma, ātis n
digitus, digitī digītus, i m
distal distālis, e
dividing divīdens, entis
division divisio, ōnis f
dorsal dorsālis, e
duct ductus, us m
during ad (Acc.)

E
ear auris, is f
docrine endocrīnus, a, um
epigastic epigastrīcus, a, um
ethmoidal ethmoidālis, e
extensor (unbending muscle)
   musculus extensor, ōris m
external externus, a um
eyebrow superciliun, i n
eyelash ciliun, i n

F
face facies, ēi f
false falsus, a, um
falx falx, falcis f
fascia fascia, ae f
fauces fauces, ium f (plur.)
fever febris, is f
fibrous fibrōsus, a, um
fibular (=peroneal) fibulāris
   (=peronēus, a, um)
fissure fissūra, ae f
flexor (bending muscle) musculus
   flexor, ōris m
floating fluctuans, ntis
fold plica, ae f
foot pes, pedis m

for ad (Acc.), pro (Abl.)
forāmen, inis n opening
forearm antebrachium, i n
forest silvestris, e
forhead sincīput, ītis n
fornix fornix, ĕcis m
forth quartus, a, um
fossa fossa, ae f
free liber, ĕra, ĕrum
from a, ab(Abl.); e, ex (Abl)
frontal frontālis, e

G
gallbladder vesīca fellea
 (=vesīca bilāris)
ganglion, a cluster of nervous cells
   ganglion, i n
gastric gastrīcus, a, um
general generālis, e
girdle cingulum, i n
gland glandūla, ae f
gluteal glutēus, a, um
great magnus, a, um
greater major, jus
groove sulcus, i m

H
hallux hallux, ūcis m
hand manus, us f
head caput, ītis n
heart cor, cordis n
hepatic hepātīcus, a, um
highest suprēmus, a, um
horn cornu, us n
hyoid hyoideus, a, um

I
ima imus, a, um
impar impar, ēris
in in (Acc.,when answering
   the question “where to?”; Abl.,
when answering the question “where?”)
incisive incisīvus, a, um
incisor incisīvus, a um
incus incus, ĭdis f
index (index finger) index, įcis m
inferior inferior, ius
in front of ante (Acc.)
inguinal inguinalis, e
inner internus, a, um
inside intra (Acc.)
intelligent sapiens, entis
interclavicular interclaviculāris, e
intercostal intercostālis, e
interlobar interlobāris, e
intermandibular intermandibulāris, e
internal internus, a, um
interosseal interosseus, a, um
interosseous interosseus, a, um
into in (Acc., when answering the question “where to?”)
intraglandular intraglandulāris, e
iris iris, ĭdis f

J
joint articulatio, ōnis f
jugular jugulāris, e

K
kidney ren, renis m
knee genu, us n

L
lacral lacrimalis, e
lactiferous lactiferus, a, um
large magnus, a, um
larynx larynx, ngis m
lateral laterālis, e
latissimus latissimus, a um
left sinister, tra, trum
leg pes, pedis m
lesser minor, us
ligament ligamentum, i n
limb membrum, i n
line linea, ae f
lingual linguālis, e
lip labium, i n
liver hepar, ātis n
local locālis, e
long longus, a, um
longest longissimus, a, um
longitudinal longitudinālis, e
lower inferior, ius
lower jaw, mandible mandibula, ae f
lung pulmo, ōnis m
lymphatic lymphatīcus, a, um

M
magnus, magnum magnus, a, um
major major, jus
man homo, ĭnis m
mandible mandibula, ae f
margin margo, ĭnis m
mastoid mastoideus, a, um
meatus meatus, us m
medial mediālis, e
medicine medicamentum, i n
membrane membrāna, ae f
membranous membranaceus, a, um
middle medius, a, um
minimus minimus, a, um
minor minor, us
mirabile mirabilis, e
mobile mobilis, e
molar molāris, e
molar tooth dens molaris
mouth os, oris n
muscular musculāris, e
muscle musculus, i m

N
nail unguis, is m
nasal nasālis, e
neck cervix, ĭcis f
nerve nerveus, i m
nerve node ganglion, i n
nervous nervōsus, a, um
network rete, is n
node nodus, i m
odule nodŭlus, i n
nose nasus, i m
notch incisūra, ae f
nuchal nuchālis, e
nucleus nucleus, i m

O
occipital occipitālis, e
occiput occipūt, ĭtis n
on in (Acc. to the question
“where to?”), Abl. to the question
“where?”)
opening forāmen, ĭnis n
operation operatio, ōnis f
optic optĭcus, a, um
ossicle ossīculum, i n
oval ovālis, e

P
palate palātum, i n
palatine palatīnus, a, um
palatini (veli) palatīnus, a, um
pancreas pancreas, ātis n
pancreatis pancreas, ātis n
parapharyngeal parapharyngeālis, e
paravesical paravesicālis, e
parenchyma parenchŷma, ātis n
parietal parietālis, e
part pars, partis f
pectoral pectorālis, e
pelvis pelvis, is f
pelvic pelvīcus, a, um
permanent permānens, ntis
peroneal peronēus, a, um
petrosal petrōsus, a, um
phalanx phalanx, ngis f
pharynx pharynx, ngis m
plane planum, i n
plant planta, ae f
plexus plexus, us m
pollex, pollicis (thumb) pollex, ōcis m
posterior posterior, ius
preoccipital preoccipitālis, e
process processus, us m
prominent promīnens, ntis
proper proprius, a, um
pterygoid pterygoideus, a, um
pulvinar pulvīnar, āris n
pyramide pyrāmis, ĭdis f

R
radix radix, ōcis f
rectum rectum, i n
region regio, ōnis f
renal renālis, e
respiratory respiratorius, a, um
rete rete, is n
retina retina, ae f
rhomboid rhomboideus, a, um
rib costa, ae f
right dexter, tra, trum
ring-shaped (= anular) anulāris, e
root, radix radix, ōcis f
rotator (rotating muscle) musculus
dotātor, ōris m
round see around

S
sacral sacrālis, e
salivary salivarius, a. um
saphenous saphēnus, a, um
segment segmentum, i n
semilunar semilunāris, e
septum septum, i n
short brevis, e
sinus sinus, us m
simple simplex, ōcis
skin cutis, is f
skull cranium, i n
small parvus, a, um
smaller minor, us
soft mollis, e
sole planta, ae f
space spatium, i n
sphenoidal sphenoidālis, e
splanchnic splanchnīcus, a, um
spleen lien, ēnis m
spur calcar, āris n
squamous squamōsus, a, um
sternal sternālis, e
sternum sternum, i n
stomach gaster, tris f
stony petrōsus, a, um
stroma stroma, ātis n
sublingual sublinguālis, e
submandibular submandibulāris, e
superficial superficiālis, e
superior, upper superior, ius
supraorbital supraorbitālis, e
suprapleural suprapleurālis, e
surface facies, ēi f
suture sutūra, ae f
system systēma, ātis n

tail cauda, ae f
tegmen tegmen, īnis n
temporal temporālis, e
tendon tendo, īnis m
tensor (straining muscle) musculus
tensor, ōris m
term termīnus, i m
thalamus thalāmus, i m
thigh femur, ōris n
third tertius, a, um
thoracic thoracīcus, a, um
thorax thorax, ācis m
through per (Acc.)
thyroid thyr(e)oideus, a, um
tissue textus, us m
to ad (Acc.)
tongue lingua, ae f
tooth dens, dentis m
top apex, īcis m
transverse transversus, a, um
tree arbor, ōris f
trochanter trochanter, ēris m
true verus, a, um
trunk truncus, i m
tympanic tympanicus, a, um

U
under infra (Acc.); sub (Acc. to
the question “where to?”), Abl. to
the question “where?”
upper superior, ius
upper jaw, maxilla maxilla, ae f
ureter urēter, ēris m
use usus, us m

V
vein vena, ae f
velum (curtain) velum, i n
vena (vein) vena, ae f
venae see vena
venous venōsus, a, um
ventricle vertricŭlus, i m
vertebra vertēbra, ae f
vertebral vertebrae, e
tissue textus, us m

W
wall paries, ētis m
wandering migrans, ntis
wisdom sapientia, ae f

Z
zygomatic zygomaticus, a, um
Part III
PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

Lesson 14
INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

§ 71. GENERAL INFORMATION ON LATIN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

The words pharmacist, pharmaceutical, pharmacy etc. originate from the ancient Greek word *pharmacon*, i.e. drug, medicine. Historically, the names of drugs and their component parts as well as the names of drug forms and some other pharmaceutical terms, particularly in medical prescriptions, are given in Latin. Nowadays, the use of Latin in the pharmaceutical practice of every country depends on its national tradition and other factors. Namely, the tradition of using Latin both in drug names and medical prescriptions exists in Russia, the Republic of Belarus, the Ukraine and some other European countries.

To Latin pharmaceutical terms belong:
1. Names of drugs: Amidopyrīnum (amidopyrin), Corvalōlum (corvalol), Streptocīdum (streptocide).
2. Names of medical plants: Belladonna (belladonna), Digitālis (foxglove), Quercus (oak).
3. Names of chemical elements: Kalium (potassium), Oxygenium (oxygen), Sulfur (sulphur).
4. Adjectives: Mentha piperīta (pepper mint), Species antiasthmatĭcae (antiasthmatic species), Suppositoria vaginalia (vaginal suppositories).
6. Names of the parts of medical plants: Tinctūra radīcis Valeriānae (tincture of valerian root), Herba Valeriānae (herb of valerian), Flores Chamomillae (flowers of matricary).
7. Supplementary nouns and adjectives (mainly in medical prescriptions): dosis (dose), numĕrus (number), talis (such).

Now let us systematize the use of capital and small letters in Latin pharmaceutical terms.

The capital letter is used:
1) In the names of drugs: Codeīnum (codeine), Furacilīnum (furacilin), Validōlum (validol).
2) In the names of medical plants: Calendūla (calendula), Eucalyptus (eucalyptus), Frangūla (buckhorn).
3) In the names of chemical elements: Ferrum (iron), Oxygenium (oxygen), Zincum (zinc).
Attention! Nouns of these three groups are written with capital letter in the dictionary form too: Codeīnum, i n; Calendūla, ae f; Ferrum, i n.

4) As the first letter of a name of the drug form, if this name is the first in a multiword term: Linimentum Streptocīdi (liniment of streptocide), Species antiasthmaticae (antiasthmatic species), Tinctūra Valeriānae (tincture of valerian).

5) As the first letter of a name of the plant component, if this name is the first in a multiword term: Herba Valeriānae (herb of valerian), Flores Chamomillae (flowers of matricary), Folia Menthae piperītæ (mint pepper leaves).

The small letter is used:
1. In adjectives both in the structure of a term and in the dictionary form: Mentha piperīta (piper mint) — piperītus, a, um;
   Acīdum acetylsalicylĭcum (acetylsalicylic acid) — acetylsalicylĭcus, a, um.
2. In drug form names or plant component names being not the first in the term structure as well as in the dictionary form of these names:
   Acīdum acetylsalicylĭcum in tabulettis (acetylsalicylic acid in tablets) — tabuletta, ae f; acetylsalicylĭcus, a, um.
   Decoctum cortīcis Quercus (decoction of oak bark) — cortex, ĭcis m; decoctum, i n.
3. If a drug form name or a plant component name is used without drug names:
   unguenta et linimenta (ointments and liniments); solutio ad usum externum (solution for external use); pulvĕres composĭti (compound powders); folia et flores (leaves and flowers); radix et rhizōma (root and rhizome)
4. In constructions with a preposition indicating prescription, order of drug use or way of storage:
   Solutio Furacilīni ad usum externum (solution of furacilin for external use); Tabulettae contra tussim (tablets for cough); Thea medicinālis pro infantībus (medicinal tea for children); Mixtio pro inhalationībus in vitro nigro (mixture for inhalation in dark phial)

Some other peculiarities of using capital or small letter in pharmaceutical terms will be further described in the subsequent parts of this textbook.

§ 72. THE DRUG FORM NAMES

Every drug is produced in a physical form most adequate for use. Traditionally, three main forms are used: solid, semisolid and liquid.

Solid forms:
Dragées (dragée, a French word which is used without latinization in plural and has no Latin dictionary form) — drops
Granůla (granūlum, i n) — granules of different form containing drug substances
Pilūlae (pilūla, ae f) — pills, small balls with a drug substance

111
Pulvĕres (pulvis, ĕris m) — powders
Species (species, ĕrum f, only Plural form) — species, mixture of different parts of medicinal plants
Tabulettæ (tabuletta, ae f) — tablets
Theæ (thea, ae f) — teas

Semisolid forms
Emplastra (emplastrum, i n) — plasters
Pastæ (pasta, ae f) — pastes, thick ointments
Suppositoria (suppositorium, i n) — suppositories
Unguenta (unguentum, i n) — ointments

Liquid forms
Decocta (decoctum, i n) — decoctions
Emulsa (emulsum, i n) — emulsions
Extracta (extractum, i n) — extracts
Guttae (gutta, ae f) — drops (of liquids)
Infūsa (infūsum, i n) — infusions
Linimenta (linimentum, i n) — liniments
Mixtūrae (mixtūra, ae f) — mixtures
Mucilagīnes (mucilāgo, ĭnis f) — mucilages, liquids containing mucous substances
Olea (oleum, i n) — oils
Sirūpi (sirūpus, i m) — syrups
Solutiōnes (solutio, ōnis f) — solutions
Tinctūrae (tinctūra, ae f) — tinctures

Some other drug forms
Aĕrosōla (aĕrosōlum, i n) — aerosols
Capsŭlae (capsŭla, ae f) — capsules
Lamellae (=Membranŭlae) ophthalmĭcae (lamella, ae f; membranŭla, ae f) — ophthalmic films with drug

§ 73. COMPONENTS OF MEDICAL PLANTS

cortex, ĭcis m — cortex, bark
flos, floris m — flower
folium, i n — leaf
fructus, us m — fruit
herba, ae f — herb
radix, ĭcis f — root
rhizōma, ātis n — rhizome
semen, ĭnis n — seed

§ 74. MEDICINAL PLANTS IN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMS

Medicinal plant names are mostly nouns of the 1st declension:
Chamomilla, ae f — matricary
Frangŭla, ae f — buckhorn
Some names are nouns of the 2nd declension:
Leonūrus, i m — motherwort
Millefolium, i n — milfoil
Less numerous are nouns of the 3rd declension:
Digitālis, is f — foxglove
Adonis, ĭdis m, f — Adonis
Very rarely nouns of the 4th declension are used: Quercus, us f — oak
One should remember that names of trees are always feminine:
Eucalyptus, i f — eucalypt
Quercus, us f — oak
Some plant names consist of a noun and an adjective:
Mentha piperīta — pepper mint
Adonis vernālis — spring Adonis
Medical plant names are used:
1. In the names of liquid drug forms: Tinctūra Valeriānae — tincture of valerian; Decoctum cortĭcis Quercus — decoction of oak bark.
2. In the labels of different packages containing the components of medical plants:
Folia Urtīcae — leaves of nettle; Semen Lini — seed of flax
3. As a component of the medical prescription:
Recipe: Extracti Aloès fluidi 1 ml — Take: Liquid extract of aloe 1 ml
Recipe: Cortĭcis Crataegi 30, 0 — Take: Cortex of hawthorn 30, 0
As we see, the name of a plant component is always placed before a plant name.

§ 75. THE MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURE
OF ONE-WORD LATIN DRUG NAMES

One- word drug names usually consist of a noun root, a suffix ( -īn- is the most common, then follow suffixes -ōl- and -īd-), and, finally, the most common ending — um:
Codēĭnum — codeine; Dibazōlum — dibazol; Saluzīdum — saluzid
In drug names specific Greek and Latin noun roots expressing certain pharmaceutical information are widely used. The knowledge of these most common morphological elements enables to write correctly complicated drug names, which is one of the main tasks of learning the pharmaceutical part of our subject. Let us memorize the first part of these morphological elements:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Morphological root</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Latin example</th>
<th>English equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-cyclin-</td>
<td>antibiotics-tetracycline</td>
<td>Tetracyclīnum</td>
<td>tetracycline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-cyclo-</td>
<td>making an effect on the metabolic processes</td>
<td>Cycloserīnum</td>
<td>cycloserin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-menth-</td>
<td>product including mint</td>
<td>Menthōlum</td>
<td>menthol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mycīn-</td>
<td>antibiotics-streptomycin</td>
<td>Monomycīnum</td>
<td>monomycin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-myco-</td>
<td>antifungal, against fungi</td>
<td>Mycoseptīnum</td>
<td>mycoseptin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pyr-</td>
<td>influence on the body temperature</td>
<td>Antipyrīnum</td>
<td>antipyrin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-strept-</td>
<td>different pharmaceutical effects</td>
<td>Streptocīdum</td>
<td>streptocide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You should memorize prefixes of Greek origin used to construct a drug name:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prefix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Latin example</th>
<th>English equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a-, an-</td>
<td>(before a vowel) denying, removing</td>
<td>Apressīnum</td>
<td>appressin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Analgīnum</td>
<td>analgin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anti-</td>
<td>acting against</td>
<td>antiasthmaticus</td>
<td>antiasthmatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hyper-</td>
<td>increase, elevation</td>
<td>Hyperōlum</td>
<td>hyperol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hypo-</td>
<td>decrease, lowering</td>
<td>Hypothiazādum</td>
<td>hypothiazid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 76. SOME RULES OF BUILDING MULTIWORD PHARMACEUTICAL TERMS

Every multiword Latin pharmaceutical term begins, as a rule, with a drug form name. Then, the drug name follows. If the drug form has an adjective, this adjective is the last in the term:

- Extractum Crataegi fluīdum — liquid extract of hawthorn
- Tabulettae Tetracyclīni obductae — coated tablets of tetracycline

Sometimes, the drug name is used without a form name, particularly if the prescription or way of storage is indicated:

- Aether pro narcōsi — ether for narcosis
- Cycloserīnum in capsŭlis — cycloserin in capsules
- Somatotropīnum humānum pro injectionĭbus — human somatotropin for injections
- Thyreoidīnum in tabulettis — thyroïdin in tablets

Latin names of drugs with compound composition can be enclosed into quotation marks or inverted commas. But English equivalents of these names are used without quotation marks or inverted commas, compare:

- Aẽrosolum “Camphomenum” — aerosol of camphomen
- Suppositoria “Anaesthesolum” — suppositories of anaesthesol

In the vocabulary you can find indication with which nouns these specific signs are used.

§ 77. EXERCISES

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate it into English:
   - Extractum Leonūri fluīdum; Linimentum Aloës; Rhizōma cum radicībus Valeriānae; Sirūps ex fructībus Rosae; Solutio “Testosterōnum” pro injectionĭbus; Suppositoria vaginalia cum Ţynthomyćino; Tabulettae Aspirīní obductae; Tinctūra foliōrum Eucalypti; Unguentum Dibiomycīni ophthalmīcum

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:
   - antiasthmatic species; coated tablets of tetracycline; decoction of oak bark; tincture of pepper mint; dry extract of belladonna; ether for narcosis; herb of spring Adonis; liquid extract of hawthorn; medicinal tea for children; mint pepper leaves; ointment of mycoseptin; powder of foxglove leaves; root and
rhizome of valerian; simple and compound powders; tablets of antipyrin; tincture of matricary flowers

§ 78. Vocabulary to Lesson 14

Latin-English vocabulary

Aloë, ēs f — aloe
Aspirīnum, i n — aspirin
cum (Abl.) — with
Dibiomycīnum, i n — dibiomycin
ex (Abl.) — of
Eucalyptus, i f — eucalypt
extractum, i n — extract
fluīdus, a um — liquid
folium, i n — leaf
fructus, us m — fruit
injectio, ōnis f — injection
Leonūrus, i m — motherwort
linimentum, i n — liniment
obductus, a, um — coated
ophthalmīcus, a, um — ophthalmic
radix, īcis f — root
rhizōma, ātis n — rhizome
sirūpus, i m — syrup
suppositorium, i n — suppository
Synthomycīnum, i n — synthomycin
tabuletta, ae f — tablet
tinctūra, ae f — tincture
Testosterōnum, i n — testosterone
unguentum, i n — ointment
vaginālis, e — vaginal

English-Latin vocabulary

Adonis — Adōnis, īdis m, ēf
antiasthmatic — antiasthmaticus, a, um
antipyrin — Antipyrīnum, i n
bark — cortex, īcis m
belladonna — Belladonna, ae f
children — infantes, ium m, ēf
coated — obductus, a, um
compound — composītus, a, um
decoction — decoctum, i n
dry — siccus, a, um
ether — aether, ēris m
extract — extractum, i, n
flower — flos, floris m
for — pro (+Abl.)
foxglove — Digitālis, is f
hawthorn — Cratāegus, i f
herb — herba, ae f
leaf — folium, i n
liquid — fluĭdus, a, um
matricary — Chamomilla, ae f
medicinal — medicinālis, e
mint — Mentha, ae f
narcosis — narcōsis, is f
oak — Quercus, us f
ointment — unguentum, i n
pepper — piperītus, a, um
powder — pulvis, ēris m
rhizome — rhizōma, ātis n
root — radix, īcis f
simple — simplex, īcis
species — species, ērum f (only plur.)
spring — vernālis, e
tablet — tabuletta, ae f
tea — thea, ae f
tetracycline — Tetracyclīnum, i n
valerian — Valeriāna, ae f

Lesson 15
LATIN IN THE MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION. STANDARD VERB FORMS INDICATING ORDER AND INSTRUCTIONS IN MAKING UP THE LATIN PART OF PRESCRIPTION. GENERAL RULES OF MAKING UP THE LATIN PART OF PRESCRIPTION

§ 79. CURRENT USE OF LATIN IN MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

The use of Latin medical prescription nowadays is still common in many states of Europe, particularly in the countries of the former USSR including the Republic of Belarus and the Russian Federation. That is why the rules of proper use of Latin in medical prescriptions are obligatory in medical university syllabus of these states. Latin inscriptions are written on the labels of drug packing, reference books, and in medical prescriptions.
§ 80. THE IMPERATIVE VERB FORMS USED IN A SIMPLE MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

The Latin part of a medical prescription begins with the Imperative form Recĭpe: Take:. This word is addressed to a pharmacist who has to prepare and to hand over a drug to a person.

If the drug is produced by a pharmaceutical plant then the prescription includes the name of this drug which is written after Recĭpe:

- Recĭpe: Unguenti Tetracyclīni ophthalmici 10, 0
- Take: Ointment of ophthalmic tetracycline 10, 0
- Recĭpe: Extracti Crataegi fluĭdi 25 ml
- Take: Liquid hawthorn extract 25 ml

After that in a new line two standard Imperative verb forms follow: Da. (Give) and Signa (Write on the label) so that the full prescription gets the following forms:

- Recĭpe: Unguenti Tetracyclīni 10
  - Da. Signa:
  - Take: Ointment of tetracycline 10, 0
  - Give. Write on the label:

- Recĭpe: Extracti Crataegi fluĭdi 25 ml
  - Da. Signa:
  - Take: Liquid hawthorn extract 25 ml
  - Give. Write on the label:

One should pay attention to the fact that both the drug form and the drug name after Recĭpe are in the Genitive form. This case form depends on the quantity of the drug administered mainly in gram amounts (indicated in decimal points without the abbreviation gr.) and milliliter amounts with the abbreviation ml:

After the standard expression Signa — Write on the label — goes the signature where the physician indicates the way of using the drug in the patient’s native language.

So — from Recĭpe to Signa — that is how the Latin part of a simple prescription, when the drug is kept in a drugstore in the prepared form, is written.
§ 81. THE CONJUNCTIVE FORMS IN MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

The Imperative verb forms can be substituted (with some exception) for the Conjunctive mode forms. These Conjunctive forms are translated into English with the word combination “let it be” + Participle II:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperative form</th>
<th>English equivalent</th>
<th>Conjunctive form</th>
<th>English equivalent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adde</td>
<td>Add</td>
<td>Addātur</td>
<td>Let it be added</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Da</td>
<td>Give</td>
<td>Detur</td>
<td>Let it be given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dentur tales doses</td>
<td>Let it be given of such doses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Misce</td>
<td>Mix</td>
<td>Misceātur</td>
<td>Let it be mixed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repĕte</td>
<td>Repeat</td>
<td>Repetātur</td>
<td>Let it be repeated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signa</td>
<td>Write on the label</td>
<td>Signētur</td>
<td>Let it be labelled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sterilĭsa!</td>
<td>Sterilize!</td>
<td>Sterilisētur!</td>
<td>Let it be sterilized!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

One should remember that the Imperative form Recĭpe can never be replaced by the Conjunctive one.

The use of the Imperative or Conjunctive forms depends only on the physician writing a medical prescription. As to students, they are to be able to write correctly the grammar form of an order or an instruction according to the initial Latin or English verb form.

§ 82. THE STRUCTURE OF A COMPLEX MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

Sometimes the physician asks the pharmacist to prepare a drug in the pharmacy. In this case, he writes down all the components of this drug. Such a prescription is called a complex one. Naturally, in such a prescription the physician indicates some components to be mixed: Misce — Mix. He can also define more precisely for what purpose the mixture is necessary — that is for making some drug form. In this case, two forms are used: fiat for the nouns in singular and fiant for the nouns in plural:

Misce, fiat pulvis — Mix to make a powder
Misce, fiant suppositoria vaginalia — Mix to make vaginal suppositories

One should remember that the Imperative form Misce is only used in the combination with the forms fiat and fiant.

Sometimes, the physician indicates in which form and in what amount the drug is to be prepared. In this case, he writes down these standard forms:

Da (Dentur) tales doses numĕro … in tabulettis (ampullis, capsŭlis etc) — Give (Let be given) in such a dose amount… in tablets (ampoules, capsules etc.).

If two or more components are taken in the same amount, the dose is indicated only after the latter one, and the adverb ana “of each” is written before this amount:

Recĭpe: Cortĭcis Frangŭlae
Foliōrum Urtīcae ana 15, 0

Take: Cortex of buckthorn
Leaves of nettle of each 15, 0
Now, let us see some complex medical prescriptions with different standard phrases:

Reciīpe: Sulfadimezīni
Streptocīdi
Synthomycīni ana 1,0
Misce, fiat pulvis
Detur Signētur: 
Take: Sulphadimezine
Streptocide
Synthomycin of each 1,0
Mix to make a powder
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:

Reciīpe: Euphyllīni
Butyri Cacao 2,0
Misce, fiat suppositorium
Da tales doses numĕro 6
Signa: 
Take: Euphylline
Cocoa oil 2,0
Mix to make a suppository
Give such a dose in the amount 6
Write on the label:

§ 83. SOME PECULIARITIES OF QUANTITY EXPRESSION IN A MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

Sometimes, the amount of oils or other liquids can be indicated in drops. The number of drops is written in Roman figures. If one drop is indicated, so the Accusative singular form guttam is used, if more than one, the Accusative plural form guttas is used:

Reciīpe: Olei Menthae piperītae guttam I
Reciīpe: Olei Eucalypti guttas V
Take: Mint pepper oil I drop
Take: Eucalypt oil V drops

In some cases, the physician doesn’t indicate the dosage of a complex prescription component and lets the pharmacist determine the quantity of this component on his own. In this case, the standard expression quantum satis — in sufficient amount — is used:

Reciīpe: Chinosōli 0,03
Acīdi borīci 0,3
Tannini 0,06
Olei Cacao quantum satis,
Olei Cacao quantum satis, 
Da tales doses numĕro 6
Signa: 
Take: Chinosol 0,03
Boric acid 0,3
Tannin 0,06
Cocoa oil in sufficient amount 
to make a vaginal suppository
Give such a dose in the amount 6
Write on the label:

§ 84. SOME IMPORTANT RULES FOR MAKING UP THE LATIN PART OF A MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

1. Every new line begins with capital letter.
2. Every first letter of the next new line is written strictly under the first letter of the previous one.
3. If the prescription text is to be continued in the next line, the first letter in the next line should begin under the fourth letter of the previous one.
4. Any correction in the prescription text is forbidden.

§ 85. MORPHOLOGICAL ROOTS OF PLANT ORIGIN INDICATING ALKALOIDS AND GLYCOSIDES WITH DIFFERENT PHARMACEUTICAL EFFECTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Morphological roots</th>
<th>Latin examples</th>
<th>English equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-anth-</td>
<td>Galanthamīnum, i n Helianthus, i m</td>
<td>galanthamine sunflower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-eph-, -ephedr-, -phedr-</td>
<td>Ephatīnum, i n Ephedrīnum, i n Theophedrīnum, i n</td>
<td>ephatin ephedrin theophedrin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-glyc(y)-</td>
<td>Glycerīnum, i n Corglycōnum, i n Glycyrrhīza, ae f</td>
<td>glycerin corglycon licorice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sed: Glucōsum, i n</td>
<td>But: glucose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-phyll-</td>
<td>Euphyllīnum, i n Platyphyllīnum, i n</td>
<td>euphylline platyhylline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-phyt</td>
<td>Phyīnum, i n Phytolysīnum, i n</td>
<td>phytin phytolysin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-stroph-</td>
<td>Strophanthus, i m Strophosānum, i n</td>
<td>strophanthus strophan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-the(o)-</td>
<td>Theobromīnum, i n Theophyllīnum, i n</td>
<td>theobromine theophylline</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 86. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into English:
- Capsŭlae Phytomenadiōni; Emulsum olei Helianthi; Granūla Glycryrami; Pulvis Phytīni pro infantĭbus; Solutio Corglycōni in ampullis; Solutio Glucōsi pro injectionĭbus; Suppositoria cum Euphyllīno; Tabulettae “Theophedrinum”; Theophyllīnum in tabulettis

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:
- aerosol of ephatin; dry (liquid) extract of licorice; glyceric solution of ichthyol; oily solution of phytomenadion; pectoral species; tincture of strophanthus; sunflower oil for emulsion; suppositories with theophylline; sublingual tablets of glycin

3. Write down the dictionary form of the nouns and adjectives as well as standard verb forms indicating order or instruction in the medical prescription; translate the texts of medical prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Soluble streptocid 5,0 Solution of glucose 10 % — 100 ml Mix. Let it be sterilized!
2. Take: Theophylline 0,2 Cocoa oil 2,0 Mix to make a rectal suppository
Give.
Write on the label:

3. Take: Tincture of srophanthus 5 ml
tincture of lily of the valley
Tincture of valerian of each 10 ml
Let it be mixed
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:

4. Take: Oily solution of nitroglycerin 1 % — 0,0005
Let it be given in such a dose amount 20 in capsules
Let it be labelled:

5. Take: Solution of strophanthine 0,05 % — 1 ml
Give in such a dose amount 10 in ampoules
Write on the label:

6. Take: Cortex of althea
Cortex of licorice
Seed of flax of each 10,0
Leaves of eucalyptus 2,5
Mix to make a species
Give. Write on the label:

7. Take: Chloroform
Sunflower oil of each 20 ml
Mix to make a liniment
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:

8. Take: Ichthyol 3,0
Vaseline up to 30,0
Mix to make an ointment
Give.
Write on the label:

§ 87. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 15
Latin-English vocabulary

ampulla, ae f — ampoule
capsula, ae f — capsule
Corglyconum, i n — corglycon
Glucosum, i — glucose
Glycyrhamum, i n — glycyrham
granulum, i n — granule
emulsion, i n — emulsion
Euphyllinum, i n — euphylline
Helianthus, i m — sunflower
infans, ntis m, f — child
Phytinum, i n — phytin
Phytomenadiōnum, i n — phytomenadion
pulvis, ēris m — powder
solutio, ōnis f — solution
tabulettta, ae f — tablet
Theophedrinum, i n — theophedrin
English-Latin vocabulary

aerosol — aērosŏlum, i n
althea — Althaea, ae f
ampoule — ampulla, ae f
capsule — capsŭla, ae f
chloroform — Chloroformium, i n
cocoa — Cacăo (without a dictionary form)
extact — extractum, i n
ephatin — Ephatīnum, i n
emulsion — emulsum, i n
eucalyptus — Eucalyptus, i f
flax — Linum, i n
glucose — Glucōsum, i n
glyceric — glycerinōsus, a, um
glycin — Glycīnum, i n
ichthyol — Ichthyōlum, i n
leave — folium, i n
licorice — Glycyrrhīza, ae f
lily of the valley — Convallaria, ae f
liniment — linimentum, i n
nitroglycerin — Nitroglycerīnum, i n
oil — oleum, i n
oily — oleōsus, a, um
pectoral — pectorālis, e
phytomenadion — Phytomenadiōnum, i n
rectal — rectālis, e
seed — semen, ŭnis n
soluble — solubīlis, e
solution — solutio, ŏnis f
species — species, ĕrum f (only plural)
streptocide — Streptocīdum, i n
strophanthine — Strophanthīnum, i n
strophanthus — Strophanthus, i m
sublingual — sublinguālis, e
sunflower — Helianthus, i m
theophylline — Theophyllīnum, i n
up to — ad
vaseline — Vaselīnum, i n
Lesson 16
THE USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE OF SOME PHARMACEUTICAL FORMS IN THE FIRST LINE OF A MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

§ 88. GENERAL INFORMATION ON THE USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE PHARMACEUTICAL FORMS IN A MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

The Accusative of some pharmaceutical forms is used only in a simple medical prescription. This is the way of prescribing tablets, drops, suppositories, ophthalmic films, sponges for different medical purposes, aerosols. The name of these pharmaceutical forms is written in the Accusative singular or plural. The Latin drug name in the Nominative form is sometimes enclosed in inverted commas or quotation marks, which are omitted in the English text, where in this case the common construction with preposition “of” is used. The amount of the prescribed drug is hereby not indicated in grams or in milliliters but is expressed by the word “numĕrus” (number) in the Ablative form (numĕro) and a common figure. In the second line the standard verb forms are written:

Recĭpe: Tabulettas “Antistrumĭnum” Take: Tablets of antistrumin
numĕro 50 number 50
Detur. Let it be given
Signetur: Let it be labelled:

Recĭpe: Tabulettas Aloĕs Take: Coated tablets of aloe
obductas 0,05 numĕro 20 number 20
Da Give.
Signa: Write on the label:

As in English drug names inverted commas or quotation marks are not used, it is impossible when translating to find out which Latin equivalent drug name with these specific signs is to be written. That is why when translating from English into Latin we have to consult the dictionary and to find out whether the drug name is enclosed in inverted commas or quotation marks or not. So, if we see in the dictionary: psoriasin (ointment) — Unguentum “Psoriasĭnum”; antistrumin (tablets) — Tabulettae “Antistrumĭnum”; Benspar (capsules) — Capsulae “Bensparum”, we know, how the Latin drug name is to be written correctly, for example:

Take: Capsules of benspar number 100 — Recĭpe: Capsŭlas “Benspar”
Give. numĕro 100
Write on the label: Da. Signa:
Now let us see in detail the use of different pharmaceutical forms in the Accusative.

§ 89. THE PRESCRIPTION OF TABLETS IN THE ACCUSATIVE FORM

The drug prescription in tablets may proceed in three forms.

In the first case after Recīpe the Accusative singular form Tabulettam is written, then follow the drug name in the Genitive form and the dose. In the second line of the prescription the instruction Da (Dentur) tales doses numĕro… in tabulettis is written and after that the standard verb form Signa (Signetur) follows:

Recīpe: Tabulettam Paracetamoli 0,3  Take: Tablet of paracetamol 0,3
   Da tales doses numero 6  Give such a dose in
   in tabulettis  the amount 6 in tablets
   Signa:  Write on the label:

In the second case after Recīpe the Accusative plural form Tabulettas is written, then follow the drug name in the Genitive form and figures indicating the amount of active medical substance of a tablet and, finally, the dosage expressed by the “numero” and a figure:

Recīpe: Tabulettas Paracetamōli 0,3  Take: Tablets of paracetamol 0,3
   numero 6  number 6
   Da.  Give
   Signa:  Write on the label:

But the same drug can be prescribed in a traditional form indicating the drug quantity, and that is the third way of drug prescribing in the tablet form. In this case after Recīpe the drug name and its dose follow. In the second line the instruction Da (Dentur) tales doses numĕro 6 in tabulettis and, finally, the standard form Signa (Signetur) are written:

Recīpe: Paracetamōli 0,3  Take: Paracetamol 0,3
   Da tales doses numéro 6  Give such a dose in
   in tabulettis  the amount 6 in tablets
   Signa:  Write on the label:

It is absolutely imperative that every physician is to know all the ways of writing out medical prescriptions. But the choice of a prescription form is up to him.

§ 90. THE PRESCRIPTION OF DROPS IN THE ACCUSATIVE FORM

Drops (as the equivalent in Latin pharmaceutical terminology the French word “dragées” is used) are now prescribed mainly in the plural form. From
the grammar point of view, the “dragées” is considered as Accusative depending on the word Reciße, but as a French word, it has no case and dictionary form. The prescription regulations for drops are the following. After the Reciße follow the form Dragées, the drug names in inverted commas (quotation marks) or in the Genitive form and the Ablative case numero with a figure indicating the dose:

Recipe: Dragées “Undevitum” numero 3  Take: Drops of undevit
Detur. number 30  
Signetur: Let it be given
Let it be labelled:

One should add that sometimes, an other order of drops prescription is used. In this case, after Reciße the singular form Dragée is written with the drug name in the Genitive and a figure indicating the dose. In the second line follows the phrase Da (Dentur tales doses) numero…:

Recipe: Dragée Diazolini 0,05  Take: Dragée of dazolin 0,05
Da tales doses numero 20  Give such a dose in the amount 20
Signa:  Write on the label:

§ 91. THE PRESCRIPTION OF OPTHALMIC FILMS

Ophthalmic films are absorbable gelatin films containing drug substances. They are used instead of ophthalmic drops when keeping such a film under the eyelid at night.

The ophthalmic films are usually prescribed with the preposition “cum”. The prescription regulations for the ophthalmic films are the following. The verb Reciße is followed by the Accusative plural forms lamellas (or membranulas) ophthalmicas, the drug name in the Genitive, the preposition “cum” with the active pharmaceutical component and the form numéro with a figure. In the second and third lines the standard phrases Da (Dentur) tales doses numero … and Signa (Signetur) are written:

Recipe: Lamellas ophthalmicas cum Novocaino numero 8  
Da. Signa:
Take: Ophthalmic films with Novocain number 8
Give. Write on the label:

§ 92. THE PRESCRIPTION OF MEDICAL SPONGES

A pharmaceutical sponge is a porous substance saturated with a drug. It is applied to the necessary place and has antiseptic, haemostatic and other pharmaceutical effects. Pharmaceutical sponges are usually prescribed in plural form and in two variants.

1. The verb Reciße is followed by the Accusative plural form Spongias, the drug name in quotation marks (inverted commas) and the “numero” with
a figure. The second and the third lines contain the standard phrases Da (Dentur) and Signa (Signetur):

Recĭpe: Spongias “Methuracōlum”
number 10
Da
Give
Signa:
Write on the label:

2. Recipe is followed by the Accusative plural forms Spongias and an adjective, the preposition “with”, the drug name and the form “numero” with a figure. After that the standard forms Da (Detur) and Signa (Signetur) follow:

Recĭpe: Spongias antiseptĭcas cum Kanamycino numero 5
Detur. Signetur:
Take: Antiseptic sponges with kanamycin number 5
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:

§ 93. THE PRESCRIPTION OF SUPPOSITORIES IN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

A pharmaceutical suppository is a drug in the form of a round or conical tablet which is solid at room temperature and semisolid at body temperature. They distinguish the rectal suppository and the vaginal one. In the Accusative case, suppositories are prescribed as medical sponges:

1. Recĭpe is followed by the Accusative plural form Suppositoria with the adjective vaginalia (rectalia) or without these adjectives, the drug name in inverted commas and the numero with a figure. The second and the third lines contain the standard phrases Da (Dentur) and Signa (Signetur):

Recĭpe: Suppositoria vaginalia “Osarbonum” numero 10
Da. Signa:
Take: Vaginal suppositories of osarbon number 10
Give. Write on the label:

2. Recipe is followed by the Accusative plural form Suppositoria, the preposition “cum” and the active pharmaceutical component in the Ablative, a figure indicating the amount of this component, the form “numero” with a figure. After that the standard forms Da (Detur) and Signa (Signetur) follow in the next lines:

Recĭpe: Suppositoria cum Diprophyllīno 0,5 numero 30
Detur. Signetur:
Take: Suppositories with diprophylline 0,5 number 30
Let it be given. Let it be labelled:

§ 94. THE PRESCRIPTION OF AEROSOLS IN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE
An aerosol contains the drug in a gaseous form which is contained in a small cylinder provided with a valve. 

Aerosols are prescribed in the Accusative singular form in two ways: 
1. Recipe is followed by the Accusative singular form Aĕrosolum, its name in inverted commas and the numero with a figure. After that the standard forms Da (Detur) and Signa (Signetur) follow in the next lines:

Recĭpe: Aĕrosolum “Proposōlum”  
Da  
Numero: 2  
Signa:  
Take: Aerosol of proposol number 2  
Give.  
Write on the label:  

2. Recipe is followed by the Accusative singular form Aĕrosolum and its name in inverted commas or quotation marks. In the second line, the standard phrase Da (Dentur) tales doses numero is written:

Recĭpe: Aĕrosolum “Proposōlum”  
Da tales doses numero 2  
Signa:  
Take: Aerosol of proposol  
Give such a dose in the amount 2  
Write on the label:

§ 95. MORPHOLOGICAL ROOTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Morphological roots</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Latin examples</th>
<th>English equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| -aesthes-, -aesth-  | correction of sensibility | Anaesthesīnum, i n  
Aesthocīnum, i n  
Bellasthesīnum, i n  
Pavesthesīnum, i n | anaesthesin  
aesthocin  
bellasthesin  
pavesthesin |
| -asthes-            | anesthetic effect | Novocaīnum, i n  
Ultraceīnum, i n | novocain  
ultracain |
| -cain-              | influence on the central and peripheral nervous system | Bromcamphŏra, ae f  
Camphŏnium, i n | bromcamphora  
camphonium |
| -camph-             | 1) containing erythromycin  
2) produced from erythrocytes | Erythromycīnum, i n  
Eryhaemum, i n  
Erycyclīnum, i n | erythromycin  
erthaemum  
erycyclin |
| -erythr-, -eryth-,  | haemostatic or haematopoiesis  
-ery-                | Haemostaticus, a, um  
Haemostimulinum, i n | haemostatic  
haemostimulin |
| -haem-              | stimulating effect | Oestradiōlum, i n  
Synoestrōlum, i n | oestradiol  
synoestrrol |
| -oestr-             | female genital hormones | Medrotestrōnum, i n  
Testosterōnum, i n | medrotestron  
testosteron |
| -test-              | male genital hormones | Thymalfīnum, i n  
Thymoptīnum, i n | thymalin  
thymoptin |
| -thym-              | immunity stimulators  
produced from thymus | Thyroidīnum, i n  
Rifathyroīnum, i n | thyroidin  
rifathyroin |
§ 96. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from Latin into English:
   Ampullae cum pulvère Rifathyroīni; Granūla Erycyclīni in capsūlis; Injectiōnes Thymalīni pro adultis; Lamellae ophthalmīcae cum Dicaīno; Pulvis Dicaīni crystallisātus; Solutio Pyromecaīni pro infusionibus intravenōsis; Spongia haemostatīca in vitro vitreo; Suppositoria “Anaesthesōlum”; Thyreoidīnum in tabulettis

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from English into Latin:
   anaesthesin for narcosis; camphoric spirit for triturating; eryhaem in vitreous phials; haemostatic plaster of feracryl; oily solution of synoestrol in the ampoules; testoenat for injections; tablets of pregoestrol; solution of thymogen for intranasal introduction

3. Give the dictionary form of the nouns and the adjectives, translate the medical prescriptions into Latin:
   1. Take: Coated tablets of allochol for children number 25
      Give. Write on the label:
   2. Take: Capsules of oestradiol 0,14 number 12
      Give. Write on the label:
   3. Take: Thyreoidin 0,05
      Let it be given of such a dose number 50 in tablets
      Let it be labelled:
   4. Take: Solution of haemophobin 5 ml
      Give such a dose in the amount 10 in ampoules
      Write on the label:
   5. Take: Erynit 0,1
      Give such a dose in the amount 20 in tablets
      Write on the label:
   6. Take: Ophthalmic films with neomycin number 8
      Let it be given
      Let it be labelled:
   7. Take: Vaginal suppositories with synthomycin 0,15 number 10
      Give. Write on the label:
   8. Take: Aerosol of camphomen
      Give such a dose in the amount 2
      Write on the label:
   9. Take: Haemostatic collagen sponge
      Let it be given of such a dose number 4 in plastic packets
      Let it be labelled:
   10. Take: Anaestesin 2,5
       Cocoa oil in sufficient amount to make a rectal suppository
       Let it be given of such a dose number 50 in tablets
       Let it be labelled:
§ 97. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 16

**Latin-English vocabulary**

adultus, a, um — adult
appulla, ae f — ampoule
“Anaesthesolum” (Anaesthesolum, i n) — anaesthesol
capsula, ae f — capsule
crystallisatus, a, um — crystal
Dicaïnum, i n — dicaïn
Ercyclinum, i n — ercyclin
granulum, i n — granule
haemostaticus, a um — haemostatic
infusio, ōnis f — infusion
intravenōsus, a, um — intravenous
lamella, ae f — film (ophthalmic)
Oestradiolum, i n — oestradiol
ophthalmicus, a, um — ophthalmic
Pyromecainum, i n — pyromecain
pulvis, ēris m — powder
Rifathyroinum, i n — rifathyroin
spongia, ae f — sponge
Thymalinum, i n — thymalin
Thyreoidinum, i n — thyreoidin
vitrum, i n — phial, glass
vitreus, a, um — vitreous

**English-Latin vocabulary**
aerosol — aërosolum, i n
ampoule — ampulla, ae f
anaesthesin — Anaesthesinum, i n
camphomen — “Camphomēnum” (Camphomēnum, i n)
camphoric — camphorētus, a, um
collagen — collagenicus, a, um
eryhaem — Eryhaemum, i n
erynit — Erynitum, i n
erythromycin — Erythromycinum, i n
feracryl — “Feracrylum” (Feracrylum, i n)
glass — 1) vitrum, i n; 2) vitreus, a, um
haemophobin — Haemophobīnum, i n
haemostatic — haemostaticus, a, um
in sufficient amount — quantum satis
intranasal — intranasālis, e
introduction — inductio, ōnis f
Lesson 17

LATIN NAMES OF CHEMICAL ELEMENTS, ACIDS, OXIDES, HYDROXIDES, PEROXIDES

§ 98. LATIN NAMES OF CHEMICAL ELEMENTS

Latin names of chemical elements are, as a rule, nouns of the second declension and of the neuter gender beginning always with a capital letter:

Aluminium, i n — aluminium
Ferrum, i n — iron
Zincum, i n — zinc

Nouns of two chemical elements are exception from this rule:
Phosphŏrus, i m — phosphorus
Sulfur, ŭris n — sulphur (in American English the spelling is sulfur)

Some elements have double names:
fluorine — Fluōrum, i n = Phthorum, i n
magnesium — Magnium, i n = Magnesium, i n

See the chemical element names of most common usage in the table below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin chemical symbols</th>
<th>Latin names</th>
<th>English names</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Al</td>
<td>Aluminium</td>
<td>aluminium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ag</td>
<td>Argentum</td>
<td>silver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>As</td>
<td>Arsenĭcum</td>
<td>arsenic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Au</td>
<td>Aurum</td>
<td>gold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ba</td>
<td>Barium</td>
<td>barium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bi</td>
<td>Bismŭthum</td>
<td>bismuth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Br</td>
<td>Bromum</td>
<td>bromine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ca</td>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>calcium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Carboneum</td>
<td>carbon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin chemical symbols</td>
<td>Latin names</td>
<td>English names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cl</td>
<td>Chlorum</td>
<td>chlorine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cu</td>
<td>Cuprum</td>
<td>copper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fe</td>
<td>Ferrum</td>
<td>iron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Fluōrum seu Phthorum</td>
<td>fluorine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hg</td>
<td>Hydrargyrum</td>
<td>mercury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Hydrogenium</td>
<td>hydrogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Iōdum</td>
<td>iodine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>Kalium</td>
<td>potassium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li</td>
<td>Lithium</td>
<td>lithium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mg</td>
<td>Magnium seu Magnesium</td>
<td>magnesium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mn</td>
<td>Mangānum</td>
<td>manganese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Na</td>
<td>Nafrīum</td>
<td>sodium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Nitrogenium</td>
<td>nitrogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>Oxygenium</td>
<td>oxygen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pb</td>
<td>Plumbum</td>
<td>lead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Phosphŏrus</td>
<td>phosphorus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sl</td>
<td>Silicium</td>
<td>silicon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Sulfur</td>
<td>sulphur (sulfur)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zn</td>
<td>Zincum</td>
<td>zinc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 99. LATIN NAMES OF ACIDS

Every Latin acid name consists of the noun acĭdum (acid) and an adjective of the first group with the ending -um in accordance with the rules of grammar agreement. One should, hereby, pay attention, that in the dictionary form, both nouns and adjective are written with a small letter but in the combination with adjectives the noun acĭdum is written with a capital letter:

acĭdum, i n — acid
borĭcus, a, um — boric
**but:** Acĭdum borĭcum

There are three variants of Latin acid names. The first two variants cover the names of acids which include oxygen, the last one — the names of acids without oxygen.

In the first variant, when an acid contains the greatest amount of oxygen, the suffix -ic- and the ending -um are added to the stem of a chemical element. English equivalents of these Latin adjectives have the suffix -ic as a final element:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin noun of chemical element</th>
<th>The stem</th>
<th>Latin adjective indicating the acid</th>
<th>The full Latin name of the acid</th>
<th>The full English name of the acid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sulfur, ūris n</td>
<td>sulfur-</td>
<td>sulfurĭcus, a, um</td>
<td>Acidum sulfurĭcum (H₂SO₄)</td>
<td>sulphuric acid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The same way of acid names building is used when names of organic acids are formed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin noun</th>
<th>The stem</th>
<th>Latin adjective indicating the acid</th>
<th>The full Latin name of the acid</th>
<th>The full English name of the acid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lac, lactis n (milk)</td>
<td>lact-</td>
<td>lacticus, a, um</td>
<td>Acīdum lactĭcum</td>
<td>lactic acid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the second variant when the acid of the same element contains lesser amount of oxygen, the suffix -os- is used. In this case English equivalents have the ending -ous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin noun</th>
<th>The stem</th>
<th>Latin adjective indicating the acid</th>
<th>The full Latin name of the acid</th>
<th>The full English name of the acid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sulfur, ŭris n</td>
<td>sulfur-</td>
<td>sulfurōsus, a, um</td>
<td>Acīdum sulfurōsum (H₂SO₃)</td>
<td>sulphurous acid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the third variant, when an acid doesn’t contain oxygen, the prefix hydro- and the suffix -ic- are added to the stem:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin noun</th>
<th>The stem</th>
<th>Latin adjective indicating the acid</th>
<th>The full Latin name of the acid</th>
<th>The full English name of the acid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sulfur, ŭris n</td>
<td>sulfur-</td>
<td>hydrosulfurĭcus, a, um</td>
<td>Acīdum sulfurōsum (H₂S)</td>
<td>hydrosulphuric acid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

One should remember that in acid names (as well as in salt names) formed from the noun Nitrogenium only a part of the stem is used: -nitr:

Acīdum nitrĭcum — nitric acid  Acīdum nitrōsum — nitrous acid

§ 100. LATIN NAMES OF OXIDES, HYDROXIDES, PEROXIDES

Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides consist of two words. The first one is always the Genitive form of a chemical element, then the Nominative form oxŭdum (hydroxŭdum, peroxŭdum) follows:

Zinci oxŭdum — zinc oxide
Aluminii hydroxŭdum — aluminium hydroxide
Hydrogenii peroxŭdum — hydrogen peroxide

The names oxŭdum, hydroxŭdum, peroxŭdum are nouns of the neutral gender of the second declension:

oxŭdum, i n
hydroxŭdum, i n
peroxŭdum, i n

§ 101. MORPHOLOGICAL ROOTS REFLECTING CHEMICAL INFORMATION
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Morphological roots</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Latin examples</th>
<th>English equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-(a)z-, -(a)zid-, -(a)zin-, -(a)zol-, -(a)zon-</td>
<td>presence of nitrogen in the heterocyclic compounds</td>
<td>Azaleptīnum, i n Phthivazīdum, i n Sulfapyridazīnum, i n Norsulfazōlum, i n Sibazōnum, i n</td>
<td>azaleptin phthivazid sulfapyridazin norsulfazol sibazon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-benz-</td>
<td>presence of benzene ring</td>
<td>Benzoheoxīnum, i n benzoīcīus, a, um</td>
<td>benzoheaxin benzoic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-cyan-</td>
<td>cyanic acid, its anions or a cyan group</td>
<td>Cyanocobalamānum, i n cyanīdīnum, i n</td>
<td>cyanocobalamine cyanide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-hydr-, -hyd-</td>
<td>presence of hydrogen, water or a hydroxyl group</td>
<td>Hydrogenīnum, i n Formaldehydīnum, i n</td>
<td>hydrogen formaldehyde</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-naphth-</td>
<td>products of petroleum</td>
<td>Naphthalānum, i n Naphthyzīnum, i n</td>
<td>naphthalan naphthyzin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-oxy-</td>
<td>presence of oxygen and its compounds</td>
<td>Chinoxīdinum, i n Oxylīdinum, i n</td>
<td>chinoxydin oxylidin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-phtha(l)-</td>
<td>derivatives of phthalic acid</td>
<td>Phthalazōlum, i n Phthazōlum, i n</td>
<td>phthalazol phthazoil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-phthor-</td>
<td>presence of fluorine compounds</td>
<td>Phthorocortum, i n Phthoracizīnum, i n</td>
<td>phthoracizin phthorocort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sulf-</td>
<td>presence of sulphur or its derivatives</td>
<td>Norsulfazōlum, i n sulfas, ātīs m</td>
<td>norsulphazoil sulphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-thi-</td>
<td>presence of sulphur atom in the names of thiosalts and thioacids</td>
<td>Thiopenītūnum, i n thiosulfīs, ātīs m</td>
<td>thiopental thiosulphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-yl-</td>
<td>presence of carbohydrogenic radicals</td>
<td>Benzylpenīcillīnum, i n salicylīcīus, a, um</td>
<td>benzylpenicillin salicylic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 102. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into English:
   Acīdum arsenicōsum anhydrĭcum; Acīdum ascorbinĭcum in dragēes; Cyanocobalamānum seu Vitamīnum B12; Emplastrum Plumbi simplex; Emulsūm Erythrophosphatīdi in ampullīs; Phthalazōlum in tabulettīs; Pulvis Magnesīi oxŭdi; Sirūpus Aloēs cum Ferro; Sulfacylum solubīle pro injectionībus; Suspensio Hydrocortisōni in flaconībus; Tabulettae Acīdī folīci; Tabulettae Acīdī acetylsalicylīci enterosolubīles

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:
   ascorbic acid in drops; coated tablets of glutaminic acid; clear hydrochloric acid; diluted solution of hydrogen hydroxide; emulsion of castor oil; granules of furazolidon for children; powder of foxglove leaves; solution of nicotinic acid; solution of sulothizon for intratracheal injection; spirituous solution of iodine for internal use; suspension of aluminium hydroxide; tablets of lipoic acid; thioacetazon in tablets; white powder of sulphadimidine; yellow mercury oxide

3. Give the dictionary form both of the nouns and the adjectives, translate the medical prescriptions:
1. Take: Tablets of phthalazol 0.05 number 20
   Give. Write on the label:

2. Take: Naphthalan ointment 50.0
   Let it be given
   Let it be labelled:

3. Take: Clear hydrochloric acid 6.0
   Distilled water up to 100 ml
   Let it be mixed
   Let it be given
   Let it be labelled:

4. Take: Purified sulphur
   Peach oil of each 30.0
   Let it be mixed
   Let it be sterilized!
   Let it be given
   Let it be labelled:

5. Take: Streptocide
   Sulphadimezin
   Norsulphazol of each 5.0
   Mix to make the finest powder
   Let it be given
   Let it be labelled:

6. Take: Glutaminic acid 1.5
   Solution of glucose 25 % — 450 ml
   Mix
   Give
   Write on the label:

7. Take: Menthol 0.1
   Zinc oxide
   Boric acid of each 0.5
   Vaseline 10.0
   Mix to make an ointment
   Give
   Write on the label:

8. Take: Boric acid 5.0
   Zinc oxide
   Wheat starch of each 25.0
   Ointment of naphthalan 45.0
   Mix to make a paste
   Give.
   Write on the label:

9. Take: Ascorbic acid 0.2
   Nicotinic acid
   Riboflavin of each 0.25
   Distilled water up to 100 ml
   Let it be mixed
   Let it be given
   Let it be labelled:

10. Take: Yellow hydrogen oxide 0.6
    Ichthyol 0.8
    Zinc ointment 20.0
    Mix to make a paste
    Give
    Write on the label:

11. Take: Extract of belladonna 0.015
    Powder of rhubarb root
    Magnesium oxide of each 0.3
    Mix to make a powder
    Give such a dose in the amount 10
    Write on the label:

12. Take: Salicylic acid
    Lactic acid of each 6.0
    Icy acetic acid 3.0
    Colloidal up to 20.0
    Mix
    Give
    Write on the label:
§ 103. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 17

Latin-English vocabulary

acetylsalicylĭcus, a, um — acetylsalicylic
acĭdum, i n — acid
Aloë, ės f — aloe
anhydricus, a, um — anhydrous
arsenicōsus, a, um — arsenous
ascorbinĭcus, a, um — ascorbic
Cyanocobalamĭnum, i n — cyanocobalamin
depurātus, a, um — purified
dragées — drops
emplastrum, i n — plaster
emulsum, i n — emulsion
enterosolubĭlis, e — enteric soluble
Erythrophoshatīdum, i n — erythrophosphatide
Ferrum, i n — iron
flaco, ōnis m — phial
folĭcus, a, um — folic
Hydrocortisoĭnum, i n — hydrocortisone
Magnesium, i n — magnesium
Naphthalānum, i n — naphthalan
Norsulphazoĭlum, i n — norsulphazol
oxĭdum, i n — oxide
Phthalazoĭlum, i n — phthalazol
Plumbum, i n — lead
Riboflavĭnum, i n — riboflavin
Ricĭnus, i m — castor-oil plant
seu — or
simplex, ēcis — simple
solubĭlis, e — soluble
Streptocīdum, i n — streptocide
Sulfacylum, i n — sulfacyl
Sulfur, ūris n — sulphur
suspensio, ōnis f — suspension
vitamīnum, i n — vitamin

English-Latin vocabulary

acetic — acetĭcus, a, um
acid — acĭdum, i n
aluminium — Aluminium, i n
ascorbic — ascorbinĭcus, a, um
boric — borīcus, a, um
caster oil — oleum Ricīni
caster oil plant — Ricīnus, i m
clear — purus, a, um
coated — obductus, a, um
collodion — Colloidium, i n
diluted — dilūtus, a, um
distilled — destillātus, a, um
drops — dragées
emulsion — emulsum, i n
finest — subtilissīmus, a, um
foxglove — Digitālis, is f
furazolidon — Furazolidōnum, i n
glutaminic — glutaminīcus, a, um
hydrochloric — hydrochlorīcus, a, um
hydrogen — Hydrogenium, i n
hydroxide — hydroxīdum, i n
icy — glaciālis, e
ichthyol — Ichthyōlum, i n
intratracheal — intratracheālis, e
iodine — Iōdum, i n
lactic — lactīcus, a, um
lipoic — lipoīcus, a, um
mercury — Hydrargyrum, i n
naphthalan — Naphthalānum, i n
nicotinic — nicotīnicus, a, um
oxide — oxīdum, i n
paste — pasta, ae f
peach — Persīcum, i n
phthalazol — Phthalazōlum, i n
peach oil — Oleum Persicōrum
rhubarb — Rheum, i n
riboflavin — Riboflavīnum, i n
root — radix, īcis f
salicylic — salicylīcus, a, um
sulphadimizon — Sulphadimīzōnum, i n
spirituous — spiritūōsus, a, um
starch — Amīylum, i n
sulphadimezin — Sulfadimezīnum, i n
sulphadimidine — Sulfadimidīnum, i n
thioacetzone — Thioacetazonum, i n
vaseline — Vaseline, i n
Lesson 18
LATIN NAMES OF SALTS ON THE LABELS
OF DRUG NAMES AND IN MEDICAL PRESCRIPTIONS

§ 104. LATIN NAMES OF SALTS, WHOSE ANIONS CONTAIN OXYGEN

Latin names of salts consist of two parts. First goes the Genitive case of a cation (a chemical element name or, more seldom, a drug name), in the second place is the Nominative of an anion. Anion names are always written with a small letter. If we speak of anions derivatives of acids containing oxygen of different degrees, two variants of these anions are distinguished:

1. Names of anions containing the greatest amount of oxygen are masculine nouns of the third declension with the endings -as in the Nominative and -ātis in the Genitive singular: Na₂SO₄ — Natrii sulfas → sulfas, ātis m:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical symbol of the salt</th>
<th>Latin name of the salt</th>
<th>The anion and its dictionary form</th>
<th>English equivalent of the anion name</th>
<th>English equivalent of the salt name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Na₂SO₄</td>
<td>Natrii sulfas</td>
<td>sulfas, ātis m</td>
<td>sulphate</td>
<td>sodium sulphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NaNO₃</td>
<td>Natrii nitras</td>
<td>nitras, ātis m</td>
<td>nitrate</td>
<td>sodium nitrate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So, one can very easily find out the correlation between English and Latin anion names of the first group: the English ending -ate corresponds to the Latin ending -as. In this way we may instantly determine Latin equivalents of English anions without analyzing their chemical composition, including all the anions of organic acids having the ending -ate too:

sodium salicylate — Natrii salicylas

testosterone propionate — Testosterōni propionas

2. The names of anions containing lesser amount of oxygen are masculine nouns of the third declension with the endings -is in the Nominative and -ītis in the Genitive singular: Na₂SO₃ — Natrii sulfis → sulfis, ītis m:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical symbol of the salt</th>
<th>Latin name of the salt</th>
<th>The anion and its dictionary form</th>
<th>English equivalent of the anion name</th>
<th>English equivalent of the salt name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Na₂SO₃</td>
<td>Natrii sulfis</td>
<td>sulfis, ītis m</td>
<td>sulphite</td>
<td>sodium sulphite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NaNO₂</td>
<td>Natrii nitris</td>
<td>nitris, ītis m</td>
<td>nitrite</td>
<td>sodium nitrite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
As you can see, the Latin anion ending -is corresponds to the English anion ending -ite, and it allows, as it is seen above, to determine any necessary equivalent taking as well into consideration the spelling of each separate word.

§ 105. LATIN NAMES OF SALTS WHOSE ANIONS DO NOT CONTAIN OXYGEN

The names of anions which don’t contain oxygen are neutral nouns of the second declension with the suffix -id- and the ending -um:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemical symbol of the salt</th>
<th>Latin name of the salt</th>
<th>The anion and its dictionary form</th>
<th>English equivalent of the anion name</th>
<th>English equivalent of the salt name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Na₂S</td>
<td>Natrii sulfidum</td>
<td>sulfidum, i n</td>
<td>sulphide</td>
<td>sodium sulphide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NaCl</td>
<td>Natrii chloridum</td>
<td>chloridum, i n</td>
<td>chloride</td>
<td>sodium chloride</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So, the complex ending -idum of the Latin anions which don’t contain oxygen corresponds to the English ending -ide in the anions with the similar chemical compound.

**Conclusion:** if you remember the endings of the three seen above variants of Latin anions and if you know which Latin anion ending corresponds to the English one, you do not need to know the chemical compound of any salt to express correctly both English and Latin salt name.

§ 106. ANION NAMES OF BASIC SALTS

Latin anion names of basic salts are formed by adding the prefix sub-:
- Bismūthi subnitras — basic nitrate of bismuth
- Aluminii subacētas — basic acetate of aluminium

§ 107. TWO-COMPONENT NAMES OF POTASSIUM AND SODIUM SALTS

Two-component Latin names of potassium and sodium salts are written with a hyphen. Each component of such a name is a neutral noun of the second declension. The second component following the hyphen is written with a small letter. In the dictionary form, after the two-component Nominative cases the ending -i and the gender sign n follow. English equivalents of these terms are written without a hyphen:
- Sulfacylum-natrium, i n — sulphacyl sodium
- Benzylpenicillīnum- kalium, i n — benzylpenicillin potassium

§ 108. MORPHOLOGICAL ROOTS REFLECTING PHARMACEUTICAL INFORMATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Morphological roots</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Latin examples</th>
<th>English equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-aeth-</td>
<td>presence of ethyl group</td>
<td>aethylĭcus, a, um Aethynālum, i n</td>
<td>ethylic etynal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morphological roots</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>Latin examples</td>
<td>English equivalents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lysin-, -lytin-</td>
<td>removing some destructive factor</td>
<td>Phytolysīnum, i n Broncholytīnum, i n</td>
<td>phytolysin broncholytin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-meth-</td>
<td>presence of methyl group</td>
<td>Methylēnum, i n Methylum, i n</td>
<td>methylen methyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-morph-</td>
<td>analgetics, derivatives of morphine</td>
<td>Apomorphīnum, i n Morpholongum, i n</td>
<td>apomorphin morpholong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-phen-</td>
<td>presence of phenyl group</td>
<td>Phenōlum, i n Phthorophenazīnum, in</td>
<td>phenol phthorophe-nazin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-phthi-</td>
<td>antitubercular effect</td>
<td>Phthivazīdum, i n Phthizopyrāmum, i n</td>
<td>ftivazide phthizopyram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-poly-</td>
<td>large number, multitude</td>
<td>polyvitaminōsus, a, um Polyamīnum, i n</td>
<td>multivitaminous polyamin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-thromb-</td>
<td>thrombolytics, against thrombosis</td>
<td>Thrombīnum, i n Thrombocytīnim, i n</td>
<td>thrombin thrombocytin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 109. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from Latin into English:

Aether stabilisātus pro narcosi; Barīi sulfas pro rentgeno; Cerebrolysīnum in ampullis ad usum parenterālem; Emulsum Benzylii benzoātis medicinālis; Granūla Aethazōli-natrii pro infantĭbus; Membranūlæ ophthalmīcae cum Atropīni sulfāte; Methylēnum coeruleum in capsŭlis; Phenylii salicylas in tabulettis; Pulvis Phenoxy methylpenicillīni pro suspensiōne; Solutio Aethacridīni lactātis spirituōsa; Species polyvitaminōsae et pectorāles; Tabulettae Calcii orotātis; Theobrominum-natrium cum Natrii salicylāte; Spirĭtus aethylĭcus rectificātus; Vitamīnum B₆ seu Pyridoxini hydrochlorĭdum

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from English into Latin:

basic acetate of lead; basic nitrate of bismuth with belladonna extract; coated tablets of tetracycline hydrochloride; hypertonic solution of sodium chloride; isotonic solution of sodium chloride; morpholong for intramuscular injections; ointment of copper citrate; ophthalmic films with fibrinolysin; polyethylenoxide for intravenous use; powder of sarcolysin for solution; precipitated calcium carbonate; rectified ethylic spirit; solution of terrilytin for inhalation; suppositories of methyluracil; syrup of broncholytin in phials; tablets of ethylmorphine hydrochloride for adults; tablets of phthivazid

3. Give the dictionary form of both nouns and adjectives; translate the medical prescriptions:

1. Take: Tincture of spring pheasant’s eye herb 180 m Amidopyrin 2,0
2. Take: Extract of belladonna 0,001 Basic bismuth nitrate Phenyl salicylate of each 0,25
Sodium bromide 4,0  
Codeine phosphate 0,2  
Mix  
Give  
Write on the label:

3. Take: Ethylmorphine hydrochloride 0,1  
Vaseline 10,0  
Mix to make an ointment  
Give  
Write on the label:

4. Take: Rectified ethyl spirit 95 % — 20 ml  
Water for injections 100 ml  
Let it be mixed  
Let it be given  
Let it be labelled:

5. Take: Platiphylline hydrotartrate 0,005  
Phenobarbital  
Papaverin hydrochloride of each 0,02  
Give such a dose in the amount 10  
Write on the label:

6. Take: Dimedrol 0,01  
Ephedrin hydrochloride 0,1  
Peach oil 10 ml  
Mint oil 1 drop  
Mix  
Give  
Write on the label:

7. Take: Coated tablets of oleandoandomycin phosphate 0,125 number 25  
Let it be given  
Let it be labelled:

8. Take: Ophthalmic films with neomycin sulphate number 10  
Let it be given  
Let it be labelled:

9. Take: Morphine hydrochloride 0,015  
Apomorphine hydrochloride 0,05  
Diluted hydrochloric acid 1 ml  
Distilled water up to 2000 ml  
Let it be mixed  
Let it be given  
Let it be labelled:

10. Take: Magnesium carbonate 4,0  
Potassium carbonate 5,0  
Sodium hydrocarbonate 1,0  
Glycerin in sufficient amount  
Mix to make a paste  
Give  
Write on the label:

11. Take: Menthol  
Ethylmorphine hydrochloride of each 200 ml  
Sugar 0,03  
Mix to make a powder  

12. Take: Tincture of althea root 180 ml  
Sodium hydrocarbonate  
Sodium benzoate of each 5,0  
Simple syrup 20,0
Give such a dose in amount
10
Write on the label:
Mix
Give
Write on the label:

§ 110. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 18

Latin-English vocabulary

Aethacridīnum, i n — ethacridine
aeethylĭcus, a, um — ethyl
eaether, īris m — ether
Aethazōlum-natrium, i n — ethazol sodium
Althaea, ae f — althea
Apomorphinum, i n — apomorphine
Atropīnum, i n — atropin
benzoas, ātis m — benzoate
Benzylium, i n — benzyl
Calcium, i n — calcium
Cerebrolysīnum, i n — cerebrolysin
cœruleus, a, um — blue
hydrochlorĭdum, i n — hydrochloride
lactas, ātis m — lactate
medicīnālis, e — medical
Methylēnum, i n — methylen
orōtas, ātis m — orotate
parenterālis, e — parenteral
pectorālis, e — pectoral
Phenoxyethylpenicillīnum, i n — phenoxyethylpenicillin
Phenylium, i n — phenyl
polyvitaminōsus, a, um — polyvitaminous
Pyridoxīnum i n — pyridoxine
rentgēnum, i n — roentgenoscopy
salicylas, ātis m — salicylate
sulfas, ātis m — sulphate
Natrium, i n — sodium
spirituōsus, a, um — spirituous
spiritus, us m — spirit
suspensio, ŏnis f — suspension
Theobromīnum-natrium, i n — theobromine sodium
vernālis, e — existing in spring
vitamīnum, i n — vitamin

English-Latin vocabulary

amidopyrin — Amidopyrīnum, i n
apomorphine — Apomorphīnum, i n
basic acetate — subacētas, ātis m
basic nitrate — subnitras, ātis m
belladonna — Belladonna, ae f
benzoate — benzoas, ātis m
bismuth — Bismūthum, i n
bromide — bromīdum, i n
broncholytin — Broncholytīnum, i n
calcium — Calcium, i n
carbonate — carbōnas, ātis m
chloride — chlorīdum, i n
citrate — citras, ātis m
codeine — Codeīnum, i n
copper — Cuprum, i n
diluted — dilūtus, a, um
dimedrol — Dimedrōlum, i n
fibrinolysin — Fibrolysīnum, i n
film — lamella, ae f; membrānula, ae f
glycerin — Glycerīnum, i n
hydrocarbonate — hydrocarbōnas, atis m
hydrochloride — hydrochlorīdum, i n
hypertonic — hypertonīcus, a, um
inhalation — inhalatio, ōnis f
intramuscular — intramusculāris, e
intravenous — intravenōsus, a, um
isotonic — isotonīcus, a, um
lead — Plumbum, i n
magnesium — Magnesium, i n
menthol — Menthōlum, i n
morphine — Morphīnum, i n
neomycin — Neomycīnum, i n
papaverine — Papaverīnum, i n
peach — Persīcum, i n
peach oil — Oleum Persicōrum
phenobarbital — Phenobarbitālum, i n
phenyl — Phenylum, i n
phosphate — phosphas, ātis m
phthivazid — Phthivazīdum, i n
platyphylle — Platypyllīnum, i n
polyethyleneoxide — Polyaethylenōxīdum, i n
potassium — Kalium, i n
precipitated — praecipitātus, a, um
salicylate — salicýlas, ātis m
sarcolysin — Sarcolysīnum, i n
sodium — Natrium, i n
spring Adonis (=spring pheasant’s eye) — Adōnis (īdis m, f) vernālis (is, e)
spirit — spirītus, us m
sugar — Sacchārum, i n
syrup — sirūpus, i m
terrilytin — Terrilytīnum, i n
vaseline — Vaselīnum, i n

§ 111. MODEL (SAMPLE) OF THE FINAL TEST
IN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

1. Write down the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents:
   1) mercury; 2) basic acetate; 3) mint; 4) oxide; 5) rhubarb; 6) sugar;
   7) sunflower; 8) glucose; 9) peach; 10) chloroform

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:
   1) decoction of oak bark; 2) powder of foxglove leaves; 3) dry extract of
      licorice; 4) camphoric spirit for trituration; 5) eryhaem in glass phials; 6) coated
      tablets of glutaminic acid; 7) emulsion of castor oil; 8) precipitated calcium
      carbonate

3. Write down the dictionary form of the nouns and adjectives and
   translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

1. Take: Ichthyol 3,0
   Vaseline up to 30,0
   Mix to make an ointment
   Give
   Write on the label:

2. Take: Clear hydrochloric acid 6,0
   Distilled water up to 100 ml
   Let it be mixed
   Let it be given
   Let it be labelled:

3. Take: Ophthalmic films with neomycin number 8
   Let it be given
   Let it be labelled:

4. Take: Tincture of althea root 180 ml
   Sodium hydrocarbonate
   Sodium benzoate of each 5,0
   Simple sirup 20,0
   Mix. Give.
   Write on the label:
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A
acetylsalicylicus, a, um
acetylsalicylic
acidum, i n acid
ad (Acc.) for
ad usum externum to be taken externally (= for external use)
ad usum internum to be taken internally (= for internal use)
ad usum parenterālem to be taken parenterally (= for parenteral use)
adultus, a, um adult
Aethacridīnum, i n ethacridine
Aethazōlum-natrium, i n ethazol sodium
aether, ĕris m ether
aethylĭcus, a, um ethylic
Aloë, ёs f aloe
Althaea, ae f althea
ampulla, ae f ampoule
Anaesthesōlum, i n anaesthesol
anhydricus, a, um anhydrous
Apomorphīnum, i n apomorphine
arsenicōsus, a, um arsenous
ascorbinĭcus, a, um ascorbic
Aspirīnum, i n aspirin
Atropīnum, i n atropine

cum (Abl.) with
Cyanocobalamīnum, i n cyanocobalamin

D
depurātus, a, um purified
Dibiomyćīnum, i n dibiomycine
Dicaīnum, i n dicain
dragées drops

E
emplastrum, i n plaster
emulsum, i n emulsion
enterosolubīlis, e enteric soluble
Erycycלīnum, i n erycycle
Erythrophosphatīdum, i n erythrophosphatide
et and
Eucalyptus, i f eucalypt
Euphyllīnum, i n ephedrine
ex (Abl.) from, of
extractum, i n extract

F
Ferrum, i n iron
flaco, ōnis m phial
fluĭdus, a um liquid
folĭcus, a, um folic
folium, i n leaf
fructus, us m fruit

G
Glucōsum, i n glucose
Glycyramum, i n glycerine
granŭlum, i n granule

H
haemostaticus, a, um haemostatic
Helianthus, i m sunflower
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Word</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hydrochlorīdum</td>
<td>hydrochloride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrocortisōnum</td>
<td>hydrocortisone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>In (Abl.) in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infans, ntis m</td>
<td>child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infusion, ōnis f</td>
<td>infusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injectio, ōnis f</td>
<td>injection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intravenōsus, a, um</td>
<td>intravenous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lactas, ātis m</td>
<td>lactate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lamella, ae f</td>
<td>film (ophthalmic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leonūrus, i m</td>
<td>motherwort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linimentum, i n</td>
<td>liniment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium, i n</td>
<td>magnesium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medicinālis, e</td>
<td>medical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>membranŭla, ae f</td>
<td>film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methylēnum, i n</td>
<td>methylene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naphthalānum, i n</td>
<td>naphthalan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>narcōsis, is f</td>
<td>narcosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natrium, i n</td>
<td>sodium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Norsulfazōlum, i n</td>
<td>norsulphazol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obductus, a, um</td>
<td>coated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oestradiōlum, i n</td>
<td>oestradiol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oleum, i n</td>
<td>oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ophthalmīcus, a, um</td>
<td>ophthalmic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orōtas, ātis m</td>
<td>orotate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oxύdum, i n</td>
<td>oxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parenterālis, e</td>
<td>parenteral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pectorālis, e</td>
<td>pectoral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenoxy methyl penicillīnum, i n</td>
<td>phenoxymethyl penicillin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenylium, i n</td>
<td>phenyl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phthalazōlum, i n</td>
<td>phthalazol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phytiōnum, i n</td>
<td>phytin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phytomenadiōnum, i n</td>
<td>phytomenadion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plumbum, i n</td>
<td>lead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polyvitaminōsus, a, um</td>
<td>polyvitaminous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro (Abl.) for</td>
<td>powder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyridoxiōnum i n</td>
<td>pyridoxine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyromecaīnum, i n</td>
<td>pyromecain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quantum satis</td>
<td>in sufficient amount</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quercus, us f</td>
<td>oak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radix, īcis f</td>
<td>root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rectificātus, a, um</td>
<td>rectified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rentgenum, i n</td>
<td>roentgenoscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rhizōma, ātis m</td>
<td>rhizome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Riboflavinum, i n</td>
<td>riboflavin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ricīnus, i m</td>
<td>castor oil plant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rifathyroīnum, i n</td>
<td>rifathyroin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosa, ae f</td>
<td>dog rose, wild rose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salicylas, ātis m</td>
<td>salicylate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seu or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simplex, īcis f</td>
<td>simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sirūpus, i m</td>
<td>syrup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solubilis, e</td>
<td>soluble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>solutio, ōnis f</td>
<td>solution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>species, ērum f</td>
<td>species</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spirituōsus, a, um</td>
<td>spirituous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spirītus, us m</td>
<td>spirit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spongia, ae f</td>
<td>sponge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stabilisātus, a, um</td>
<td>stabilized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptocīdum, i n</td>
<td>stabilized</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

145
Sulfacylum, i n sulfacyl
sulfas, ātis m sulphate
Sulfur, ūris n sulphur
suppositorium, i n suppository
suspensio, ōnis f suspension
Synthomycīnum, i n synthomycine

T
tabuletta, ae f tablet
Testosterōnum, i n testosterone
Theobrominum-natrium, i n
theobromine sodium
Theophedrīnum, i n theophedrin
Theophyllīnum, i n theophylline
Thymalīnum, i n thymalin

Thyreoidīnum, i n thyroidin
tinctūra, ae f tincture

U
unguentum, i n ointment
usus, us m use

V
vaginālis, e vaginal
Valeriāna, ae f valerian
vernālis, e existing in spring
vitamīnum, i n vitamin
vitreus, a, um vitreous
vitrum, i n phial, glass
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A
acetic aceticus, a um
acid acīdum, i n
Adonis Adōnis, ĭdis m, f
Adonis vernalis(=sping pheasant’s eye) Adōnis (ĭdis m, f) vernālis (ís, ē)
adult adultus, i m; adultus, a, um
aerosol aērosōlum, i n
allochol Allochōlum, i n
althea Althaea, ae f
aluminium Aluminium, i n
amidopyrin Amidopyrīnum, i n
ampoule ampulla, ae f
anaesthesin Anaesthesinum, i n
antiasthmatic antiasthmaticus, a, um
antipyrin Antipyrīnum, i n
apomorphine Apomorphīnum, i n
ascorbic ascorbinĭcus, a, um
chloride chlorīdum, i n
chloroform Chloroformium, i n
citrate citras, ātis m
clear purus, a, um
coated obductus, a, um
cocoa Cacāo (without a dictionary form)
codeine Codeīnum, i n
collagen collagenīcus, a, um
collodium Collodium, i n
compound composītus, a, um
copper Cuprum, i n

decoction decoctum, i n
diluted dilūtus, a, um
dimedrol Dimedrōlum, i n
distilled destillātus, a, um
drops dragées
dry siccus, a, um

E
emulsion emulsum, i n
ephatīn Ephatīnum, i n
eryhaem Eryhaemum, i n
erynīt Erynītum, i n
erythromycin Erythromycinum, i n
ether aether, ĕris m
eucalyptus Eucalyptus, i f
extract extractum, i n

F
feracryl “Feracrylum”
(Feracrylum, i n)
fibrinolysin Fibrolysīnum, i n
film lamella, ae f; membranŭla, ae f
finest subtilissĭmus, a, um
flax Linum, i n
flower flos, floris m
for pro (Abl.); ad (Acc.) + usum
foxglove Digitālis, is f
furazolidone Furazolidōnum, i n

G
glass 1) vitrum, i n; 2) vitreus, a, um
glucose Glucōsum, i n
glutaminic glutaminĭcus, a, um
glyceric glycerinōsus, a, um
glycerin Glycerīnum, i n
glycine Glycīnum, i n
granule granŭlum, i n

H
haemophobin Haemophobīnum, i n
haemostatic haemostaticus, a, um
hawthorn Crataegus, i f
herb herba, ae f
hydrocarbonate hydrocarbōnas, ātis m
hydrochloric hydrochlorīcus, a, um
hydrochloride hydrochlorīdum, i n
hydrogen Hydrogenium, i n
hydrotartrate hydrotartras, ātis m
hydroxide hydroxīdum, i n
hypertonic hypertonīcus, a, um

I
ichthyol Ichthyōlum, i n
icy glaciālis, e
in in ( in pharmaceutical terms with
Ablative )
inhalation inhalatio, ōnis f
injection injectio, ōnis f
in sufficient amount quantum satis
intramuscular intramusculāris, e
intranasal intranasālis, e
intratracheal intratracheālis, e
intravenous intravenōsus, a, um
introduction inductio, ōnis f
iodine İōdum, i n
isotonic isotonīcus, a, um

L
lactic lactīcus, a, um
lead Plumbum, i n
leaf folium, i n
licorice Glycyrrhīza, ae f
lily of the valley Convallaria, ae f
liniment linimentum, i n
lipoic lipoīcus, a, um
liquid fluīdus, a, um

M
magnesium Magnesium, i n
matricary Chamomilla, ae f
medicinal medicinālis, e
menthol Menthōlum, i n
mercury Hydrargyrīnum, i n
methyluracil Methyluracīlum, i n
mint Mentha, ae f
morphine Morphīnum, i n
morpholong Morpholongum, i n
mycoseptin Mycoseptīnum, i n

N
naphthalan Naphthalānum, i n
narcosis narcōsis, is f
neomycin Neomycīnum, i n
nicotinic nicotiničus, a, um
norsulphazol Norsulfazōlum, i n
nitroglycerin Nitroglycerīnūm, i n
number numērus, i m

O
oak Quercus, us f
oestriadiol Oestradiōlum, i n
oil oleum, i n
oily oleōsus, a, um
ointment unguentum, i n
oleandomycin Oleandomycīnum, i n
ophthalmic ophthalmīcus, a, um
oxide oxīdum, i n
P
packet fasciculus, i m
papaverine Papaverīnum, i n
paste pasta, ae f
peach Persīcum, i n
peach oil Oleum Persicōrum
pectoral pectorālis, e
pepper piperītus, a, um
phenobarbital Phenobarbitālum, i n
phenyl Phenylīnum, i n
phial vitrum, i n
phosphate phospas, ātis m
phthalazol Phthalazōlum, i n
phthivazid Phthivazīdum, i n
phytomenadion Phytomenadiōnum, i n
plaster emplastrum, i n
plastic polyaethylenicus, a, um
polyethylenoid Polyaethylenoīdum, i n
potassium Kalium, i n
powder pulvis, ĕris m
precipitated praecipitātus, a, um
praegoestrol Praegoestrolum, i n
purified (about solid substances) purificātus, a um

R
rectal rectālis, e
rectified (about liquid substances) rectificātus, a, um
rhizome rhizōma, ātis n
rhubarb Rheum, i n
riboflavin Riboflavīnum, i n
root radix, īcis f

S
salicylate salicylas, ātis m
salicylic salicylīcus, a, um
sarcolysin Sarcolysīnum, i n
seed semen, īnis n

simple simplex, īcis
sodium Natrium, i n
soluble solubīlis, e
solutio solutio, ēnis f
species species, ērum f (only plur.)
spirit (alcohol) spiritus, us m
spiritoīsus spirituōsus, a, um
sponge spongia, ae f
spring vernālis, e
starch Amīlum, i n
streptocīde Streptocīdum, i n
strophantine Strophantīnum, i n
strophanthus Strophanthus, i m
sublingual sublinguālis, e
such talis, e
sugar Saccharum, i n
sulphadimezine Sulfadimezēnum, i n
sulphadimidine Sulfadimidēnum, i n
sulphate sulfās, ātis m
sulphur sulfur, ŭris n
sunflower Helianthus, i m
synoestrol Synoestrōlum, i n
synthomycin Synthomycīnum, i n
suppository suppositorium, i n
suspension suspensio, ōnis f
syrup sirūpus, i m

T
tablet tabuletta, ae f
tea thea, ae f
terrilytine Terrilytīnum, i n
tetracycline Tetracyclīnum, i n
testoenat Testoenātum, i n
theophylline Theophyllīnum, i n
thioacetazone Thioacetazōnum, i n
thymogen Thymogēnum, i n
thyreoidin Thyreoidīnum, i n
tincture tinctūra, ae f
trituration trituratio, ōnis f
U
up to ad
use usus, us m

V
vaginal vaginālis, e
valerian Valerīāna, ae f
vaseline Vaselīnum, i n
vitreous vitreus, a, um

W
water aqua, ae f
wheat Tritīcum, i n
with cum (Abl.)

Y
yellow flavus, a, um

Z
zinc Zincum, i n
Part IV

CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY

Lesson 19

INTRODUCTION TO LATIN CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY. ONE-WORD TERMS AND THEIR MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURE. INITIAL AND FINAL MORPHOLOGICAL ELEMENTS USED FOR WORD BUILDING. NAMES OF BRANCHES OF MEDICINE AND MEDICAL SPECIALISTS. NAMES OF MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS

§ 112. GENERAL REMARKS ON LATIN CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY

Clinical names are the most numerous among all medical terms, as these names signify a huge amount of different diseases, pathological conditions and abnormalities, medical examinations and operations. This terminology also includes a great amount of paramedical vocabulary. It is estimated that about 50% of English medical terms are of Greek origin, but this relation is particularly evident in clinical terms.

The word clinical itself is of Greek origin (klinike means bed) and it is the acknowledgement of the important role of Greek physicians in both theoretical and practical medicine. Thanks to Greek physicians many diseases got their names and via Latin became a part of European medical languages. New clinical names coming into use were built, as a rule, on the basis of Greek vocabulary and Greek morphological elements. The grammar form of new clinical terms corresponds to the norms of Latin or some European languages. This historical tradition, in particular, is followed in English. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adenītis</td>
<td>adenitis</td>
<td>inflammation of a gland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cardiopathia</td>
<td>cardiopathy</td>
<td>disease of the heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>osteōma</td>
<td>osteoma</td>
<td>tumour made up of bone tissue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is indisputable that clinical terms composed on the basis of Greek morphological elements have a very important advantage: they are short, but may stand for a large clinical definition. That is why they are the priority choice of the physicians all over the world, and everyone who has a M. D. must know the rules of word building of medical terms and learn lexical and morphological word building elements.

§ 113. THE MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURE OF ONE-WORD CLINICAL TERMS

From the point of view of their morphological structure, one-word clinical terms can be: 1) simple, containing only one stem; 2) compound, consisting of two or more morphological elements.
About 15% clinical names belong to the first group, e.g. asthma, ātis n — asthma; cancer, cri m — cancer; herpes, ētis m — herpes; ulcus, ēris n — ulcer. These noun-terms are mostly used in combination with adjectives or nouns: asthma bronchīāle — bronchial asthma; ulcus gastrīs — ulcer of the stomach.

The majority of one-word clinical terms consist of two or more morphological elements. These elements can be expressed by:

I. Greek affixes (prefixes, suffixes) and roots of nouns or adjectives. In this case, the name can contain:

I.1. A prefix, a root, a suffix and an ending (mostly -ia, -ēma, -ismus, -ītis, -ōma, -ōsis):

- parametrītis, īdis f — parametritis (tissue inflammation near uterus). The name includes: a) the prefix para- (near); b) the root metr- (uterus); c) the suffix -ītis (combination of suffix -it- and ending -is) with the constant meaning of “inflammation”;

- atrichia, ae f — atrichia (lack of hair). The name includes: a) the prefix a- (absence, lack, cessation of a function) b) the root trich- (hair) c) the ending -ia;

- hypermetropia, ae f — hypermetropia (long-sightedness). The name includes: a) the prefix hyper- (excessive function); b) the root -metr- (measurement); c) the final root -opia (sight);

I.2. A prefix, one or more roots and an ending:

- chondrōma, ātis n — chondroma (tumour of cartilaginous tissue). The name includes: a) the root chondr- (cartilage); b) the suffix -ōma with the meaning “tumour” (=tumor).

2. The initial and final word building roots in combination with the term endings -ia, -ēma, -ismus, -ītis, -ōma, -ōsis, -us. If the initial word building root hereby ends up with a consonant and the final one begins with a consonant too, these roots are joined via a connecting vowel -o-:

- rhinopathia, ae f — rhinopathy (disease of the nose). The name includes: 1) the root rhin- (nose); 2) the connecting vowel -o-; 3) the root path- (disease);

- otorhinolaryngolŏgus, i m — otorhinolaryngologist (the doctor for treating ear, nose and larynx diseases). The name includes: a) the root ot- (ear); b) the root rhin- (nose); c) the root laryng- (larynx); d) the final root -logus (a medical specialist).

If the first root ends with a vowel, the connecting -o- is usually omitted:

- pelvimetria, ae f — pelvimetry (pelvis measurement);

- tachycardia, ae f — tachycardia (abnormally fast heart rate).

If the second root begins with a vowel, the connecting -o- as a rule is omitted too:

- haemat + uria → haematuria, ae f — hematuria (blood in the urine);

- odont + algia → odontalgia, ae f — odontalgia (toothache, feeling of pain in the tooth).
Though there are some exceptions from this rule: e. g. the roots broncho- and bronchi- never lose their final vowels: bronchiectasia, ae f (=bronchoectasia) — bronchiectasis (expansion of the bronchi); bronchoadenitis, itidis f — bronchoadenitis (inflammation of lymphatic glands). The root bi- is always used with the connecting -o-: biocycle, biology, microbiology, biopharmaceutics.

§ 114. SOME NOTES ON THE WORD STRESSING IN CLINICAL NAMES

In the compound nouns with the ending -ia the last but one vowel “i” is, as a rule, stressed contrary to the rule “vowel before vowel is short”: atrichia, bronchiectasia, haematuria, hypermetropia, odontalgia, rhinopathia. The noun anatômia (anatomy) and nouns with the final element -logia keep the third syllable from the end stressed: cardiolôgia (cardiology), neurolôgia (neurology), physiolôgia (physiology).

§ 115. INITIAL AND FINAL ROOT ELEMENTS

Initial root elements are combined in a one-word term, as you could see above, with the final roots via the connecting vowel -o- or with the final suffixes. These roots are presented in the table of each lesson in the following consequence: 1) the Greek root; 2) its Latin equivalent in the dictionary form; 3) English meaning; 4) English clinical word element:

| ger-, geront- | senex, is m | 1) old man; 2) old age | ger-, geront- |

Initial roots can have two or more variants: ger-, geront- (old man or old age); haem-, haemat- (blood). All these variants are to be learnt by heart.

Final root elements are not as numerous as initial ones, but their word building capacity is very high. One should also remember that the final root or suffixed word building element comes first in the literal translation of the term, for example:

The term nephrographia, ae f consists of the initial root nephr- (kidney) and the final root -graphia (X-ray examination), so the literal translation is “X-ray examination of the kidneys”, nephrography.

The term myôma, âtis n consists of the initial root my- (muscle) and the final root -oma (tumour), so the literal translation is “tumour of muscular tissue”, myoma.

Final root elements can be part of an adjective too, e. g.: -gênus, a, um in the term biogênus, a, um — biogenic (caused by a living organism).

The final roots are presented at each lesson in the table like that:

-logus — a specialist in a brunch of science or medicine
-iâter — a doctor, specialist in a brunch of clinical medicine

Some roots may be both initial and final. Final roots have common endings, mostly the ending -ia. For example: the initial root ophthalm- and
the final root -ophthalmia have the same meaning “eye”. In these cases, both roots are placed in the same cell of the table.

§ 116. NAMES OF THE MAIN BRANCHES OF CLINICAL MEDICINE

Names of the main branches of clinical medicine are usually formed by means of the final root element -logia and the appropriate initial one, which determines the cardinal sense of the term. It should be mentioned that the most numerous names of medico-biological sciences are built according to this rule:

ophthalm- (eye) + logia → ophthalmologia, ae f — ophthalmology, a branch of clinical medicine treating eye diseases;

proct- (rectum) + logia → proctologia, ae f — proctology, a branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases. Compare as well:

immunologia, ae f — immunology, a science about immunity;

pharmacologia, ae f — pharmacology, a science about drugs and their usage;

physiologia, ae f — physiology, a science about normal vital processes in human organism.

Names of some branches of clinical medicine are built by adding the root -patho- (disease) and the final root -logia to the initial root:

neur- (nerve) + -patho + logia → neuropathologia, ae f — neuropathology, clinical neurology, a branch of clinical medicine treating nerve diseases;

sex- (sex) + -patho + logia → sexopathologia, ae f — sexopathology, a branch of medicine dealing with sexual disorders.

Some names of medical branches are formed by means of the final root element -iatria, which means some definite branches of clinical medicine:

geriatria, ae f — geriatrics, a particular branch of medicine treating diseases of older age;

paediatria, ae f — pediatrics, a branch of medicine treating children’s diseases;

phoniatria, ae f — phoniatrics, a branch of medicine treating disorders of voice production;

phthisiatria, ae f — phthisiology, a branch of medicine treating tuberculosis;

psychiatria, ae f — psychiatrics (psychiatry), a branch of medicine treating mental diseases.

§ 117. NAMES OFMEDICAL SPECIALISTS

Most names of medical specialists are composed of the final root element -logus and the appropriate initial root element which determines the cardinal sense of the term. In this way the names of most biological and medical specialists are formed:
anthropolŏgus, i m — anthropologist, a specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution;
biológus, i m — biologist, a specialist studying forms of life and living organisms;
diaetolŏgus, i m — dietarian, a specialist in the dietary nutrition;
haematolŏgus, i m — hematologist, a specialist in blood diseases.

If the name of a branch of medicine has the ending -pathologia, then the name of a specialist has the ending -patholŏgus:
neuropathologia → neuropatholŏgus, i m — neuropathologist, a specialist in nerve diseases;
sexopathologia → sexopatholŏgus, i m — sexopathologist, a specialist treating sexual disorders.

If the name of a branch of medicine has the ending -iatria, then the name of a specialist has the ending -iāter:
paediatria → paediāter, tri m — pediatrician (=pediatrist), a specialist in children’s diseases.

Finally, many Latin names of medical specialists are built by means of the suffix -ista and the initial root element:
oculista, ae m — oculist, a specialist treating eye diseases;
therauteutista, ae m — physician, therapeutist, a specialist treating inner organs.

§ 118. SOME NOTES ON THE NAMES OF MEDICAL SPECIALISTS IN LATIN AND ENGLISH

Names of medical specialists in Latin don’t fully coincide with the English equivalents, as seen above. The difference lies not only on the morphological level (pthisiāter, tri m — phthisiologist), — sometimes the lexical units don’t correspond to each other. For example, the name otorhinolaryngologist is not quite common for English or American medical vocabulary; — instead three separate terms are used: otologist, rhinologist and laryngologist. But, the term otolaryngologist is used as well. That is why it is more convenient to use this slightly artificial, but formally correct term otorhinolaryngologist, than to bring three English terms as equivalents. And otherwise, we tend to use the terms presented both in modern English and Latin medical language.

§ 119. NAMES OF MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS AND METHODS OF TREATMENT

The names of medical examinations are usually formed by means of the final root elements -graphia, -metria, -scopia, -diagnostĭca:
cystographia, ae f — cystography, X-ray examination of the urinary bladder;
pelvimetria, ae f — pelvimetry, measuring of pelvis size in women;
proctoscopia, ae f — proctoscopy, internal examination of the rectum;
thermodiagnostica, ae f — thermodiagnostics, a diagnosis via infrared radiation.

Names which signify methods of medical treatment usually contain the final root element -therapia and the initial root element indicating a method of treatment:
physiotherapia, ae f — physiatrics, treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors;
phyttherapia, ae f — phytotherapy, treatment by means of medicinal herbs.

Results of X-ray, electric or other methods of medical examination are expressed by the final root -gramma:
haemogramma, ātis n — hemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood;
mammogramma, ātis n — mammogram, an X-ray film of breast.

§ 120. Table of initial root elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek initial roots and its variants</th>
<th>Latin equivalents in dictionary form</th>
<th>English meaning</th>
<th>English word building equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anthrop-</td>
<td>homo, īnis m</td>
<td>man</td>
<td>anthrop-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bi-</td>
<td>vita, ae f</td>
<td>life</td>
<td>bi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cardi-</td>
<td>cor, cordis n</td>
<td>heart</td>
<td>cardi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ger-, geront-</td>
<td>senex, senis m</td>
<td>old man or old age</td>
<td>ger-, geront-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gynaec-</td>
<td>femīna, ae f</td>
<td>woman</td>
<td>gynaec-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haem-, haemat-</td>
<td>sanguis, īnis m</td>
<td>blood</td>
<td>hem-, hemat-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mast-, mamm-</td>
<td>mamma, ae f</td>
<td>breast</td>
<td>mast-, mamm-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neur-</td>
<td>nervus, i m</td>
<td>nerve</td>
<td>neur-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ophthalm-, -ophthalmia</td>
<td>ocŭlus, i m</td>
<td>eye</td>
<td>ophthalm-, -ophthalmia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ot-</td>
<td>auris, is f</td>
<td>ear</td>
<td>ot-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paed-</td>
<td>infans, ntis m, f</td>
<td>child</td>
<td>ped-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>path-</td>
<td>morbus, i m</td>
<td>disease</td>
<td>path-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pharmac-</td>
<td>medicamentum, i n</td>
<td>drug</td>
<td>pharmac-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phthisi-</td>
<td>tuberculosis, is f</td>
<td>tuberculosis</td>
<td>phthisi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>physi-</td>
<td>natūra, ae f</td>
<td>nature</td>
<td>physi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phyt-</td>
<td>planta, ae f</td>
<td>plant, herb</td>
<td>phyt-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proct-</td>
<td>rectum, i n</td>
<td>rectum</td>
<td>proct-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psych-</td>
<td>animus, i m</td>
<td>psyche</td>
<td>psych-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rhin-</td>
<td>nasus, i m</td>
<td>nose</td>
<td>rhin-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>somat-</td>
<td>corpus, ŏris n</td>
<td>body</td>
<td>somat-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stom-, stomat-</td>
<td>os, oris n</td>
<td>mouth</td>
<td>stom-, stomat-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 121. Table of Final Root Elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Final root elements</th>
<th>English meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-diagnostica</td>
<td>examination of functional state of organs in order to reveal some disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-gênum, a, um</td>
<td>caused by any factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-graphia</td>
<td>1) X-ray examination; 2) examination by means of electricity; 3) recording of the result of some examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-gramma</td>
<td>result of some medical examination seen on a film or presented graphically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-iater</td>
<td>medical specialist treating certain inner diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-iatria</td>
<td>any definite branch of clinical medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-logia</td>
<td>name of some science or branch of clinical medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-logus</td>
<td>name of medical or biological specialists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-metria</td>
<td>measurement of physical characteristics of human body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-scopia</td>
<td>visual or instrumental visual examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-terapia</td>
<td>method of treatment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So, your task is to memorize the word building elements of this and the following lessons and combine these elements in terms. If you are not quite sure of your version of translation, consult the dictionary.

§ 122. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:
   - cardi-, neur-, ot-, paed-, path-, pharmac-, physi-, phyt-, proct-, psych-

2. Give the Greek morphological elements corresponding to the following Latin nouns:
   - anîmus, i m; auris, is f; corpus, ŏris n; femîna, ae f; homo, īnis m; medicamentum, i n; morbus, i m; ocŭlus, i m; sanguis, īnis m; senex, senis m; tuberculōsis, is f; vita, ae f

3. Determine orally the full dictionary form of each term and the meaning of the initial and final roots, write down the full definition:
   - anthropologia; anthropogĕnus; biolŏgia; cardiolŏgus; cardiogĕnus; craniometria; geriāter; gynaecolŏgus; haematologia; iatrogĕnus; mastogramma; neuropatholŏgus; ophthalmoscopia; otorhinolaryngologia; physiologia; phthisiāter; phytotherapia; proctolŏgus; psychiatria; rhinogramma; somatologia; stomatoscopia

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:
   - branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases; branch of medicine treating diseases of children; diagnosis via examination of iris; medical specialist treating blood diseases; medical specialist treating inner organs; measurement of pelvis in women; results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood; science studying drugs and their usage; treatment by
means of natural or artificial physical factors; specialist studying forms of life and living organisms; specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution; treatment by means of medical herbs; the X-ray examination of mamma

5. Give the Latin dictionary form and the full definition in English of the terms:

anthropologist; biopharmaceutics; cardiogram; cardiography; gerontology; hematology; hemogram; iatrogenic; iridodiagnostics; mammogram; neurogenic; ophthalmoscopy; otogenic; otolaryngologist; pediatrician; pharmacotherapy; phthisiologist; phytotherapy; proctodiagnostics; proctoscopy; psychiatrist; psychogenic; psychologist; rhinoscopy; somatology; stomatology; therapeutist; thoracometry

§ 123. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 19

Latin-English vocabulary

anthropologia, ae f — anthropology, science studying the man in the process of his evolution
anthropolŏgus, i m — anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution
biologia, ae f — biology, science studying forms of life and vital organisms
cardiolŏgus, i m — cardiologist, medical specialist treating heart diseases
cardiogĕnus, a, um — cardogenic, happening because of the heart
craniometria, ae f — craniometry, measurement size of the skull
geriāter, tri m — geriatrician, medical specialist treating diseases of the aged
gynaecolŏgus, i m — gynecologist, medical specialist treating genital diseases in women
haematologia, ae f — hematology, branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases
iatrogĕnus, a, um — iatrogenic, happening because of the physician’s manner or injudicious remarks
mastogramma, ātis n — mastogram, result of breast X-ray examination
neuropatholŏgus, i m — neuropathologist, specialist treating diseases of the nervous system
ophthalmoscopy, ae f — ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye
otorhinolaryngologia, ae f — otorhinolaryngology, branch of medicine treating diseases of ear, nose and larynx
physiologia, ae f — physiology, science studying normal vital processes in human body
phthisiāter, tri m — phthisiologist, specialist treating tuberculosis
phytotherapia, ae f — phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medicinal herbs
proctolŏgus, i m — proctologist, specialist treating diseases of rectum
psychiatria, ae f — psychiatry, branch of medicine treating mental diseases
rhinogramma, ātis n — rhinogram, X-ray film of the nose
somatologia, ae f — somatology, branch of anthropology, studying structure of
the human body
stomatoscopia, ae f — stomatoscopy, visual examination of the oral cavity

**English-Latin vocabulary**

anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution —
anthropolŏgus, i m
biopharmaceutics, study of physical and chemical properties of medicinal
 substances — biopharmaceutĭca, ae f
branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases — proctologia, ae f
branch of medicine treating diseases of children — paediatria, ae f
cardiogram 1) result of X-ray examination of the heart; 2) graphical picture of
 heart action — cardiogramma, ātis n
cardiography 1) X-ray examination of the heart; 2) graphical recording of heart
 action — cardiographia, ae f
diagnosis via examination of iris, iridodiagnostics — iridodiagnostĭca, ae f
hemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood —
 haemogramma, ātis n
iatrogenic, happening because of the physician’s manner or injudicious remarks
— iatrogĕnus, a, um
iridodiagnostics, diagnosis via examination of iris — iridodiagnostĭca, ae f
measurement of pelvis in women, pelvimetry — pelvimetria, ae f
medical specialist treating blood diseases, hematologist — haematolŏgus, i m
neurogenic, happening because of the nervous system disorders — neurogĕnus,
a, um
ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye — ophthalmoscopia,
ae f
otogenic, happening because of the ear — otogĕnus, a, um
otolaryngologist, specialist treating ear and larynx diseases — otolaryngolŏgus,
i m
pediatrician, specialist treating children’s diseases — paediāter, tri m
pharmacotherapy, the treatement of disease with drugs — pharmacotherapia,
ae f
phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medical herbs — phytotherapia,
ae f
proctodiagnostics, examination of the functional state of the rectum —
 proctodiagnostica, ae f
proctoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the rectum — proctoscopia,
ae f
psychiatrist, specialist treating mental diseases — psychiāter, tri m
phthisiologist, specialist treating tuberculosis — phthisiāter, tri m
results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood, hemogram —
haemogramma, ātis n
rhinoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the nose — rhinoscopia, ae f
science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacology — pharmacologia, ae f
somatology, branch of anthropology, studying structure of human body —
somatologia, ae f
specialist studying forms of life and living organisms, biologist — biolōgus, i m
specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution, anthropologist —
anthropolōgus, i m
specialist treating diseases of inner organs, therapeutist (therapist) —
therapeutista, ae m
stomatology, branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of the oral cavity —
stomatologia, ae f
therapeutist, specialist treating diseases of inner organs — therapeutista, ae m
thoracometry, measurement of the size of the thorax — thoracometria, ae f
treatment by means of medicinal herbs, phytotherapy — phytotherapia, ae f
treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors, physiotherapy —
physiotherapia, ae f
the X-ray examination of mamma, mammography — mammographia, ae f

Lesson 20
ONE-WORD NAMES OF FUNCTION DISORDERS,
PATHOLOGICAL PROCESSES AND ABNORMAL CONDITIONS

§ 124. ONE-WORD NAMES OF FUNCTIONAL DISORDERS

Usually, one-word names of functional disorders are composed of Greek
prefixes and roots. There are the following prefixes:

1. The prefix a- (before a consonant) or an- (before a vowel). This prefix
signifies cessation or loss of a function as well as lack of property:
   adentia, ae f — lack of teeth, adentia;
   anuria, ae f — complete cessation of the secretion and excretion of urine, anuria;
   aphagia, ae f — a condition in which the ability of swallowing is lacking, aphagia;

   In the same way the Latin prefix in- (im- before consonants b or m)
combined with Latin roots is used both in nouns and adjectives:
   incontinentia, ae f — lack of voluntary control over the discharge of
   faeces or urine, incontinence;
   insufficientia, ae f — state of being inadequate to perform normal
   functions, insufficiency;
   immobilitas, ātis f — lack of mobility, immobility;
insensibīlis, e — lack of sensibility or intelligence, insensible.

2. The prefix dys- signifies functional disorders:

- **dysgeusia, ae f** — impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia;
- **dysthyreōsis, is f** — imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland, dysthyreōsis;
- **dysuria, ae f** — condition in which the passage of urine is difficult, dysuria.

3. The prefix en- (em- before consonants b, m, p) indicates the inner location of any morbid condition:

- **empyēma, ātis n** — accumulation of pus in a cavity;
- **enophthalmus, i m** — recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit

As prefixed elements some Greek adjectives, pronouns and numerals are used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prefix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Latin example</th>
<th>English translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>auto-</td>
<td>self-, resulting of one’s own action</td>
<td>autopepsia, ae f</td>
<td>the process of spontaneous disintegration of cells and tissues resulting from the action of intracellular enzymes, autopepsia (autolysis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mono-</td>
<td>one (part)</td>
<td>monoplegia, ae f</td>
<td>a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscle or one part of the body is affected, monoplegia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>di-</td>
<td>two (parts)</td>
<td>diplegia, ae f</td>
<td>paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hemi-</td>
<td>half</td>
<td>hemialgia, ae f</td>
<td>neuralgic pain affecting the right or the left side of the body or the right or the left side of any part of the body, hemialgia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 125. **ONE-WORD NAMES OF PATHOLOGICAL PROCESSES AND ABNORMAL CONDITIONS**

The majority of one-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions are composed of Greek roots, suffixes and endings which are adapted to Latin grammar system. One group of terms consists of a root, a suffix and an ending. Two suffixes of this group compose a morphological unity with their endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin suffix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Latin example</th>
<th>English equivalent</th>
<th>Full English explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ismus</td>
<td>abnormality or pathological process, the meaning of which is determined by the root element</td>
<td>botulismus, i m</td>
<td>botulism</td>
<td>a form of food poisoning due to the botulinum toxin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ōsis</td>
<td>pathological condition or process</td>
<td>dermatōsis, is f</td>
<td>dermatōsis</td>
<td>any skin disease</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Attention! The final suffix -ōsis may be used as the morphological part of a noun term not denoting a disease:

diagnōsis, is f — diagnosis, the scientific recognition of the disease from which a person suffers;
symbiōsis, is f — symbiosis, the intimate association of two organisms.
The next two suffixes are considered as final suffixed elements of the nouns of the 3rd declension:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin suffix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Latin example</th>
<th>English equivalent</th>
<th>Full English explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ēma</td>
<td>different pathological conditions</td>
<td>enanthēma, ātis n</td>
<td>enanthema</td>
<td>the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-iāsis</td>
<td>different pathological conditions</td>
<td>psoriāsis, is f</td>
<td>psoriasis</td>
<td>a chronic disease of the skin characterized by the appearance of laminated scales</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

But the majority of terms composed of morphological elements present with initial and final roots. First of all, the root path- combined with the ending -ia is used:

arthropathia, ae f — any disease affecting a joint, athropathy;
nephropathia, ae f — a disease of the kidney, nephropathy;
rhinopathia, ae f — any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy.

Other roots are also used as final elements which define more precisely the character of pathological condition, e. g.:

angiorrhagia, ae f — a hemorrhage from a vessel, angiorrhagia;
arthralgia, ae f — any kind of pain affecting a joint, arthralgia;
cancerophobia, ae f — unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma, cancerophobia (=carcinomatophobia).

Nevertheless, about 20% of one-word terms signifying pathological processes and abnormal conditions are nouns comprised of one root:

coma, ātis n — the state of complete loss of consciousness with a disorder of vitally important functions, coma;

infarctus, us m — an area of dead tissue produced by the obstruction of an end artery, infarction;

insultus, us m — cerebral thrombosis, stroke;

sepsis, is f — infection with pyogenic microorganisms, sepsis

§ 126. Initial Greek roots and their Latin equivalents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Initial Greek roots and their variants</th>
<th>Latin equivalents in dictionary form</th>
<th>English meaning</th>
<th>English word building equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>angi-</td>
<td>vas, vasilis n</td>
<td>vessel</td>
<td>angi-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arthr-</td>
<td>articulatio, ēnīs f</td>
<td>joint</td>
<td>arthr-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brady-</td>
<td>lentus, a, um</td>
<td>slow</td>
<td>brady-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cephal-</td>
<td>caput, ētīs n</td>
<td>head</td>
<td>cephal-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Greek roots and their variants</td>
<td>Latin equivalents in dictionary form</td>
<td>English meaning</td>
<td>English word building equivalents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chondr-</td>
<td>cartilāgo, ĭnis f</td>
<td>cartilage</td>
<td>chondr-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dactyl-, -dactyli a</td>
<td>digitus, i m</td>
<td>finger or toe</td>
<td>dactyl-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>derm-, dermat-, -dermia</td>
<td>cutis, is f</td>
<td>skin</td>
<td>derm-, dermat-, -dermia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encepal-</td>
<td>cerĕbrum, i n</td>
<td>brain</td>
<td>encepal-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my-</td>
<td>muscŭlus, i m</td>
<td>muscle</td>
<td>my-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nephr-</td>
<td>ren, renis m</td>
<td>kidney</td>
<td>nephr-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oste-</td>
<td>os, ossis n</td>
<td>bone</td>
<td>oste-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phon-, -phonia</td>
<td>vox, vocis f</td>
<td>voice</td>
<td>phon-, -phonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phot-</td>
<td>lux, lucis f</td>
<td>light</td>
<td>phot-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phleb-</td>
<td>vena, ae f</td>
<td>vein</td>
<td>phleb-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pseud-</td>
<td>falsus, a, um</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>pseud-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spasm-, -spasmus</td>
<td>spasmus, i m</td>
<td>spasm</td>
<td>spasm-, -spasm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tox-, toxie-</td>
<td>venēnum, i n</td>
<td>poison</td>
<td>tox-, toxie-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tachy-</td>
<td>celer, ĕris, ĕre</td>
<td>fast, quick</td>
<td>tachy-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trich-, -trichia</td>
<td>capillus, i m; pilus, i m</td>
<td>hair</td>
<td>trich-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xer-</td>
<td>siccus, a, um</td>
<td>dry</td>
<td>xer-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 127. Table of final root elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Final root elements</th>
<th>English meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-algia</td>
<td>pain in any part of the body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-geusia</td>
<td>different pathological conditions of taste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kinesia</td>
<td>different pathological conditions of voluntary motion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-malacia</td>
<td>pathological softening of an organ or tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mania</td>
<td>any form of mental disorder accompanied by some degree of excitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mycōsis</td>
<td>a morbid condition caused by a pathogenic fungus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-opia, -opsia</td>
<td>any condition of vision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pathia</td>
<td>a general name of a disease of any organ due to various causes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pepsia</td>
<td>any condition of digestion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-phagia</td>
<td>any pathological condition in the act of swallowing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-philia</td>
<td>predisposition to any morbid condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-phobia</td>
<td>a pathological fear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-plegia</td>
<td>paralysis (palsy) of the muscles of any organ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pnoē</td>
<td>a pathological condition of breathing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-trophia</td>
<td>nutrition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 128. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:
   angî-, arthr-, chondr-, nephr-, phon-, phot-, phleb-, pseud-, tachy-, trich-
2. Give the Greek roots corresponding to the following Latin nouns or adjectives:
   caput, itis n; cutis, is f; digitus, i m; lentus, a, um; os, ossis n; siccus, a, um; vena, ae f; venēnum, i n.
3. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each noun. Determine the meaning of each initial and final morphological element; write down the full definition of each term and its English equivalent:

- angiopathia; arthromalacia; autohaemotherapia; autopepsia; bradyphagia; bradypnoë; chondropathia; dactylospas mus; dermatōsis; dermatomycōsis; dysgeusia; encephalogramma; gastrospasmus; hemicrania; hemianopsia; hemiple gia; monodactylismus; myople gia; osteomalacia; osteopathia; phlebocarcinōma; photophobia; pseudoarthrōsis; spasmophilia; stomatomycōsis; tachycardia; toxicomania; xerophthalmia

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

- abnormal quickness in eating; a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales; a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking; any disease affecting a joint; any disease of the skin; any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair; any morbid condition of the nose; a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscle or one part of the body is affected; impairment of any voice; kind of pain affecting a joint; paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body; the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue; the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart; unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma

5. Give the full definition in English and the Latin dictionary form of the terms:

- angiology; apnoea; arthralgia; atrichia; atrophy; autolaryngoscopy; autopsy; biopsy; bradycardia; cephalalgia; didactylism; dystrophy; encephalomalacia; enophthalmus; hemiatrophy; hemophilia; mastopathy; monopathophobia, myopia, nephrogenic, nephropathy, ophthalmople gia, osteochondrosis; osteodystrophy; pharmacophobia; phoniatics; phlebography; phonocardiogram; photophobia; proctospasm; rhinopathy; tachyphagia; toxicosis; xerostomia

§ 129. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 20

Latin-English vocabulary

- angiopathia, ae f — any disease of blood vessels, angiopathy
- arthromalacia, ae f — softening of joints, arthromalacia
- autohaemotherapy, ae f — a method of treatment in which the patient’s own blood is administered to him, autohaemotherap y
- autopepsia, ae f — the process of a spontaneous disintegration of cells and tissues resulting from the action of intracellular enzymes, autopepsia
- bradyphagia, ae f — slowing of swallowing, bradyphagia
- bradypnoë, es f — an abnormally slow rate of breathing, bradypnoea
- chondropathia, ae f — any disease affecting a cartilage, chondropathy
dactylospasmus, i m — spasmodic contraction of a finger or toe, dactylospasm
dermatōsis, ae f — any disease of the skin, dermatosis
dysgeusia, ae f — impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia
dermatomycoinōsis, ae f — a generic term for all cutaneous infections due to fungi
encephalogramma, ātis n — any X-ray film obtained in the radiological
examination of the ventricles and subarachnoid space of the brain,
encephalogram

gastropasmus, i m — an involuntary contraction of the stomach muscle,
gastropasm

hemicrania, ae f — a periodic morbid condition with localized headaches,
hemicrania
hemianopsia, ae f (=hemianopia, ae f) — loss of half the vision in each eye,
hemianopsia (hemianopia)
hemiplegia, ae f — paralysis of one side of the body, hemiplegia
monodactylismus, i m — a congenital condition in which only one finger or toe
is present on the hand or the foot, monodactylism
myoplegia, ae f — paralysis of muscle or a condition in which muscular force is
decreased, myoplegia
osteomalacia, ae f — softening of bones, osteomalacia
osteopathia, ae f — disease of bones, osteopathia
phlebocarcinōma, ātis n — a malignant epithelial tumour affecting a vein,
phlebocarcinoma
photophobia, ae f — abnormal intolerance to light, photophobia
pseudoarthrōsis, is f — a false joint formed between the fragments of a fractured
bone which have failed to unite, pseudoarthrosis
spasmophilia, ae f — a morbid state in which there is a tendency to convulsions
and a spasms, spasmophilia
stomatomycoinōsis, is f — any morbid condition caused by a microscopical fungus,
stomatomycoinosis
tachycardia, ae f — a rapid action of the heart, tachycardia
toxicomania, ae f — an insane desire for poison, toxicomania
xerophthalmia, ae f — a morbid condition of eyes, characterized by a shrunken
appearance of the conjunctiva, xerophthalmia (=xeroma)

**English-Latin vocabulary**

abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia — tachyphagia, ae f
a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated
scales, psoriasis — psoriāsis, is f
a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking, aphagia — aphagia, ae f
angiology, the science of blood vessels — angiologia, ae f
any disease affecting a joint, arthropathy — arthropathia, ae f
any disease of the skin, dermatosis — dermatōsis, is f
any kind of pain affecting a joint, arthralgia — arthralgia, ae f
any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy — rhinopathia, ae f
any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair, trichopathy —
trichopathia, ae f
a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscle or one
part of the body is affected, monoplegia — monoplegia, ae f
apnea, the cessation of breathing — apnoe, ēs f
arthralgia, any kind of pain affecting a joint — arthralgia, ae f
atrichia, not having hair — atrichia, ae f
atrophy, a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause — atrophia,
ae f
autolaryngoscopy, the examination of one’s own larynx with a laryngoscope —
autolaryngoscopy, ae f
autopsy, post-mortem examination of a body in order to establish the cause of
death — autopsia, ae f
biopsy, examination for purposes of diagnosis of issue cut from the living
body — biopsia, ae f
bradycardia, slowing of the heart rate — bradycardia, ae f
cephalalgia, pain in the head — cephalalgia, ae f
didactylism, the congenital condition of having only two fingers on a hand or
two toes on a foot — didactylismus, i m
dystrophy, a disorder of the structure and functions of an organ or tissue due to
perverted nutrition — dystrophia, ae f
encephalomalacia, softening of the brain — encephalomalacia, ae f
enophthalmus, recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit —
enophthalmus, i m
hemiatrophy, atrophy affecting only one side of the body, or one half of
an organ — hemiatrophia, ae f
hemophilia, a severe hereditary bleeding disease affecting males and transmitted
by females — haemophilia, ae f
impairment of the voice, dysphonia — dysphonia, ae f
mastopathy, any diseased condition of the mammary gland — mastopathia, ae f
monopathophobia, fear of a particular disease — monopathophobia, ae f
myopia, short sight — myopia, ae f
nephrogenic, produced by or originating in the kidney — nephrogĕnus, a um
nephropathy, a disease of the kidney — nephropathia, ae f
ophthalmoplegia, palsy (paralysis) of ocular muscles — ophthalmoplegia, ae f
osteocondrosis, a degenerative change in bony and cartilage tissues —
osteocondrosis, is f
osteodystrophy, a disorder of bone nutrition — osteodystrophia, ae f
paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia — diplegia, ae f
pharmacophobia, a morbid fear of taking drugs or medicines — pharmacophobia, ae f
phoniatrics (=phoniatriy), the treatment of disorders of speech — phoniatria, ae f
phlebography 1) a radiographic visualization of veins; 2) the tracing of the venous pulse by means of a phlebograph — phlebographia, ae f
phonocardiogram, the record produced by an instrument for recording heart sounds — phonocardiogramma, ātis n
photophobia, abnormal intolerance to light — photophobia, ae f
proctospasm, a spasmatic contraction of the rectum — proctospasmus, i m
rhinopathy, any morbid condition of the nose — rhinopathia, ae f
tachyphagia, abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia — tachyphagia, ae f
the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue, enanthema — enanthēma, ātis n
paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia — diplegia, ae f
the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart, angiocardiography — angiocardiographia, ae f
toxicosis, a pathological condition caused by the absorption of poisons — toxicōsis, is f
unfounded or unreasonable fear of a predisposition to carcinoma — cancerophobia, ae f
xerostomia, dryness of the mouth due to failure of the salivary gland — xerostomia, ae f

Lesson 21

NAMES OF QUALITATIVE AND QUANTITATIVE ABNORMALITIES IN MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURES AND PHYSIOLOGICAL PROCESSES

§ 130. INCREASE AND DECREASE IN DIFFERENT QUANTITATIVE CONDITIONS

Increase and decrease of different quantitative conditions may, as a rule, be expressed by means of the prefixes hyper- and hypo- which are joined by final root elements:

hyperaesthesia, ae f — excessive sensitiveness of the skin, hyperaesthesia;
hyperkinesia, ae f — a condition in which there is abnormally great strength of movement, hyperkinesia;
hyperplasia, ae f — any condition in which there is an increase in the number of cells in any body’s part, hyperplasia;
hypodynamia, ae f — diminished muscular or nervous energy, hypodynamia;
hypogalactia, ae f — the secretion of a too small quantity of milk, hypogalactia;
**hypepsia, ae f** — abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion, hypepsia.

Increase and decrease in the functional activity is sometimes expressed by means of the initial roots **tachy-** and **brady-**:

**tachypnoë, ės f** — abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnoea

**bradykinesia, ae f** — abnormal sluggishness of physical movements, bradykinesia

§ 131. **INCREASE OR DECREASE IN DIMENSION OF ANATOMICAL AND HISTOLOGICAL STRUCTURES**

Increase in size of anatomical or histological structures is expressed by means of the following initial and final roots: **dolich-**, **macr-**, **mega-**, **megal-**, **-megalia**:

**dolichocolon, i n** — an abnormally long colon of normal diameter, dolichocolon

**macrocýtus, i m** — a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte

**megaduodënum, i n** — duodenum of abnormally large size, megaduodenum

**megalosplenia, ae f** — enlargement of the spleen, megalosplenia

**hepatomegalia, ae f** — a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalia

Decrease in size of anatomical and histological structures is expressed by means of the initial roots **brachy-** and **micr-**:

**brachydactyilia ae f** — a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactyilia

**microcephălus, i m** — a person with an unusually small size of head, microcephalus

Dilatation or narrowing in volume of a hollow organ, cavity or tube is expressed by means of the following roots:

**-ectasia, -ectāsis, -dilatatìo, sten-, -stenōsis:**

**bronchiectāsis, is f** — a condition of dilatation of a bronchus or bronchi, bronchiectasis

**gastrectasia, ae f** — dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia

**vasodilatatio, ōnis f** — dilatation of a blood vessel, vasodilatation

**stenostomia, ae f** — abnormal narrowness of the mouth, stenostomy

**oesophagostenōsis, is f** — narrowing of the oesophagus, oesophagostenosis

§ 132. **INCREASE AND DECREASE IN THE QUANTITY OF ANATOMICAL AND HISTOLOGICAL STRUCTURES**

Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures is expressed by means of the roots **olig-**, **poly-**, **-penia**:
oligodontia (=oligodontia), ae f — a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodontia
polyarthropathia, ae f — a pathological condition involving many joints, polyarthritis
erythropenia, ae f — a state in which there are too few erythrocytes in the blood, erythropenia
Increase in the quantity of any anatomical or histological structure may also be expressed by the final prefix -ōsis:
leucocytōsis, is f — an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood, leucocytosis
papillomatōsis, is f — the condition of diffuse formation of papillomata, papillomatosis

§ 133. Table of initial root elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek root and its variants</th>
<th>Latin equivalents in dictionary form</th>
<th>English meaning</th>
<th>English word - building equivalents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aesthes-, -aesthesia</td>
<td>sensus, us m</td>
<td>sensibility, sensitiveness</td>
<td>aesthes-, -aesthesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brachy-</td>
<td>brevis, e</td>
<td>short</td>
<td>brachy-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheil-, -cheilia</td>
<td>labium, i n</td>
<td>lip</td>
<td>cheil-, -cheilia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cyt-, -cytus</td>
<td>cellūla, ae f</td>
<td>cell</td>
<td>cyt-, -cyte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dolich-</td>
<td>longus, a, um</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>dolich-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erythr-</td>
<td>ruber, bra, brum</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>erythr-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gloss-, -glossia</td>
<td>lingua, ae f</td>
<td>tongue</td>
<td>gloss-, -glossia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glyc-</td>
<td>dulcis, e</td>
<td>sugar</td>
<td>glyc-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gnath-, -gnathia</td>
<td>maxilla, ae f</td>
<td>maxilla, upper jaw</td>
<td>gnath-, -gnathia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leuc-</td>
<td>albus, a, um</td>
<td>white</td>
<td>leuc-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macr-, mega-, megal-, -megalia</td>
<td>magnus, a, um</td>
<td>large</td>
<td>macr-, mega-, megal-, -megalia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>melan-</td>
<td>niger, gram, grum</td>
<td>black</td>
<td>melan-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>micr-</td>
<td>parvus, a, um</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>micr-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myel, -myelia</td>
<td>1) medulla ossium</td>
<td>1) bone marrow</td>
<td>myel, -myelia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2) medulla spinālis</td>
<td>2) spinal cord</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>odont-, -odonia, -dentia</td>
<td>dens, dentis, m</td>
<td>tooth</td>
<td>odont-, -odonia -dentia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>olig-</td>
<td>parvus, a, um</td>
<td>few</td>
<td>olig-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pod-, -podia</td>
<td>pes, pedis m</td>
<td>foot</td>
<td>pod-, -podia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poly-</td>
<td>multus, a, um</td>
<td>many</td>
<td>poly-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>splen-, -spleenia</td>
<td>lien, ēnis m</td>
<td>spleen</td>
<td>splen-, -spleenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sphygmy-, -sphygmia</td>
<td>pulsus, us m</td>
<td>pulse</td>
<td>sphygmy-, -sphygmia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>therm-, -thermia</td>
<td>1) calor, ōris m</td>
<td>1) heat</td>
<td>therm-, -thermia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2) temperatūra, ae f</td>
<td>2) temperature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thyre-</td>
<td>glandūla thyr(e)oidea</td>
<td>thyroid (gland)</td>
<td>thyro-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Attention! 1. The initial roots macr- and megal- may be used in many (but not in all!) cases as synonyms: macrocephalia = megalcephalia, macropodia = megalopodia. When choosing the necessary variant of the initial root one should consult the dictionary.

2. The root -cyt- can be omitted if the term begins with erythrocyt- or leucocyt- and ends with -penia:
erythrocytopenia = erythropenia; leucocytopenia = leucopenia, but: monocytopenia, thrombocytopenia — the only variants.

§ 134. TABLE OF FINAL ROOTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Final root elements</th>
<th>English meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-aemia</td>
<td>any condition of the blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-genĕsis</td>
<td>the origin and (formative) development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-genia</td>
<td>any condition of mandible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-mnesia</td>
<td>any condition of the memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-penia</td>
<td>a diminution in the number of any kind of cells present in the blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-phrenia</td>
<td>a condition associated with a serious mental disorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-plasia</td>
<td>the development of tissues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-poĕsis</td>
<td>the formation 1) of cells present in the blood; 2) of lymph; 3) of urine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sthenia</td>
<td>any condition of strength, vigour or forcefulness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tensio</td>
<td>a condition of arterial blood pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tonia</td>
<td>a condition of muscular tension in the walls of vessels and bowels</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 135. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:
   brachy-, dolich-, erythr-, glyc-, leuc-, melan-, micr-, olig-, poly-, thyre-

2. Write the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents and then give:
   1) Greek equivalents corresponding to every Latin equivalent
   2) English meaning of every pair of equivalents:
calor; cellŭla; dens; labium; lingua; lien; magnus; maxilla; medulla ossium; pes; pulsus; sensus

3. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each noun. Determine the meaning of each initial and final morphological element; write down the full definition of each term as well as its English equivalent:
amnesia; anaesthesiolŏgus; apodia; asthenia; brachycephālus; brachydactyla; dolichocephalia; dysthyreōsis; erythropenia; glossoplegia; glycaemia; hyperaemia; hyperthermia; hypotonia; leucocytōsis; melanoderma; microgenia; micromyelia; odontogenēsis; oligocytaemia; oligophrenia; polymastia; prognathia; sphygmogramma; splenomegalia; thermotherapia; thrombocytopoĕsis; thyreotoxicōsis
4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

abnormal narrowness of the mouth; abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion; abnormal sluggishness of physical movements; a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes; a condition of enlargement of the liver; an abnormally long colon of normal diameter; an increase in the total number of leucocytes; a pathological condition involving many joints; a person with an unusually small size of head; a red blood cell that is larger than normal; a state in which most of the teeth are lacking; a state in which there are too few erythrocytes; dilatation of the stomach; excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body; the origin and development of bone marrow; the origin and development of morbid condition; extremely rapid breathing

5. Give the full definition and the Latin dictionary form of the terms:

aglossia; anaemia; brachyoesophagus; cytology; dolichocolon; dystonia; erythema; gnathalgia; haematomyelia; hepatomegalia; hyperesthesia; hyperglycaemia; hypertension; hypomnesia; hypophrenia; hypoplasia; hypothermia; macrocyte; megaloduodenum; megalomania; melanocarcinoma; micromastia; microsphygmy; monocytopenosis; myelocytaemia; oligodactylia; podagra; podalgia; polyavitaminosis; splenohepatomegaly

§ 136. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 21

Latin-English vocabulary

amnesia, ae f — loss of memory of varying degree, amnesia
anaesthesiolŏgus, i m — a specialist in the administration of anaesthetics, anaesthesiologist
apodia, ae f — congenital absence of feet, apodia
asthenia, ae f — loss of vital forces, asthenia
brachycephalus, i m — an individual with disproportionately short head, brachycephalic
brachydactylia, ae f — a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia
dolichocephalia, ae f — the state of having a relatively long skull, dolichocephalia
dysthyreosis, ae f — imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland, dysthyreosis
erythropenia, ae f — a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia
glossoplegia, ae f — paralysis of the tongue, glossoplegia
glycaemia, ae f — a condition in which the circulating blood contains a quantity of sugar above normal amounts, glycaemia
hyperaemia, ae f — an excess of blood in any part of the body, hyperaemia
hyperthermia, ae f — very high body temperature, hyperthermia
hypotonia, ae f — lessened tension in any body structure, hypotonia
leucocytōsis, is f — an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood, leucocytosis
melanoderma, ātis n — a condition in which there is an unusually large accumulation of melanin in the skin, melanoderma
microgenia, ae f — a condition in which the chin is of unusually small size, microgenia
micromyelia, ae f — general reduction in size of the spinal cord, micromyelia
odontogenēsis, is f — the origin and formative development of teeth, odontogenesis
oligocytaemia, ae f — a condition in the blood in which there is cell deficiency, oligocytaemia
oligophrenia, ae f — congenital lack of the mentality, oligophrenia
polymastia, ae f — a state in which in human beings there are more than two distinct mammary glands, polymastia
prognathia, ae f — a condition in which there is abnormal projection of one or both jaws, prognatism
sphygmoramma, ātis n — a record of the arterial pulse waves, sphygmogram
splenomegalia, ae f — enlargement of the spleen, splenomegalia
thermotherapia, ae f — the use of heat in the treatment of disease, thermotherapia
thrombocytopoĕsis, is f — the formation of blood platelets, thrombocytopenesis
thyreotoxicōsis, is f — any toxic condition attributable to hyperactivity of the thyroid gland, thyrotoxicosis

**English-Latin vocabulary**

abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion, hypopepsia — hypopepsia, ae f
abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnea — tachypnoë, ēs f
a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalia — hepatomegalia, ae f
a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactyia — brachydactyilia, ae f
aglossia, a congenital condition of being devoid of a tongue — aglossia, ae f
an abnormally long colon of normal diameter, dolichocolon — dolichocōlon, i n
anaemia, a condition of the blood in which there are quantitative and qualitative changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood — anaemia, ae f
an increase in the total number of leucocytes, leucocytosis — leucocytōsis, is f
a pathological condition involving many joints, polyarthropathy — polyarthropathia, ae f
a person with an unusually small size of head, microcephalus — microcephālus, i m
a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte — macrocytus, i m
a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodentia — oligodentia, ae f
a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia — erythropenia, ae f
brachyoesophagus, a congenitally short oesophagus — brachyoesophasus, i m
dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia — gastrectasia, ae f
dolichocolon, an abnormally long colon of normal diameter — dolichocolon, i n
cytology, the science of the form and functions of cells — cytologia, ae f
dystonia, a state of disordered tonicity — dystonia, ae f
erythema, redness of the skin due to hyperaemia — erythema, ātis n
excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body, hyperaesthesia —
hyperaesthesia, ae f
extremely rapid breathing, tachypnea — tachypnoē, ēs f
gnathalgia, pain in one or both jaws — gnathalgia, ae f
haematomyelia, bleeding within the substance of the spinal cord —
haematomyelia, ae f
hepatomegalia, a condition of enlargement of the liver — hepatomegalia, ae f
hyperaesthesia, excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body —
hyperaesthesia, ae f
hyperglycaemia, an excessive amount of sugar in the blood — hyperglycaemia,
ae f
hypertension, high arterial blood pressure — hypertensio, ōnis f
hypomnesia, a weak or defective state of the memory — hypomnesia, ae f
hypophrenia, feebleness of mind — hypophrenia, ae f
hypoplasia, underdevelopment of a tissue or part — hypoplasia, ae f
hypothermia, deficiency of body heat — hypothermia, ae f
macrocyte, a red blood cell that is larger than normal — macrococcus, i m
megaloduodenum, duodenum of abnormally large size — megaloduodenum, i n
megalomania, a mental condition in which a person has grandiose delusions
about himself and his own intellect, power, importance and so on —
megalomania, ae f
melanocarcinoma, a darkly pigmented malignant epithelial tumor —
melanocarcinoma, ātis n
micromastia, abnormal smallness of the mammary glands — micromastia, ae f
microsphygmy, diminished strength of pulse — microsphygmy, ae f
monocytopoiesis, the production of monocytes in the bone marrow —
monocytopoësis, is f
myelocytaemia, the presence of myelocytes in the blood — myelocytaemia, ae f
oligodactylyia, a congenital deficiency of fingers or toes — oligodactylyia, ae f
podagra, gout, a disease of the purine metabolism characterized by attacks of
arthritis with an assoiated raised serum uric acid — podagra, ae f
podalgia, sensation of pain in the foot — podalgia, ae f
polyavitaminosis, a morbid condition caused by deficiency of several
vitamins — polyavitaminōsis, is f
splenohepatomegaly, enlargement of the spleen — splenohepatomegalia ae f
the origin and development of the bone marrow, myelogenesis — myelogenēsis, is f
the origin and development of a morbid condition, pathogenesis — pathogenēsis, is f

Lesson 22
NAMES OF INFLAMMATORY PROCESSES WHICH OCCUR IN ORGANS AND TISSUES. NAMES OF ABNORMALITIES IN THE STATES OF PHYSIOLOGICAL FLUIDS

§ 137. NAMES OF INFLAMMATORY CONDITIONS

The state of inflammation in any organ or tissue, as a rule, is usually expressed by means of the final suffixed element -ītis which is transformed into -itidis in the Genitive form. The suffix -ītis is added to the initial root of the noun which defines the place of a morbid state. All the terms with the suffix -ītis are nouns of the 3rd declension:

arthr- (joint) + ītis → arthritis, itidis f — inflammation of a joint, arthritis
hepat- (liver) + ītis → hepatitis, itidis f — inflammation of the liver, hepatitis

The suffix -ītis may be added both to the Greek and Latin roots:

nephr- (Greek nephros kidney) + ītis → nephritis, itidis f — an inflammatory disease of the kidneys, nephritis

The site of the inflammatory process can be defined more precisely by means of the following prefixes of the Greek origin:

1) endo- (inner, mostly a mucous part of an organ):
endo + metr- (utĕrus, i m) + ītis → endometritis, itidis f — an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis

2) para- (cellular, connective and other tissues near an organ):
para- + cyst (urinary bladder) + ītis → paracystitis, itidis f — a condition of inflammation affecting the connective and other tissues lying close to the bladder, paracystitis

3) peri- (tissues enclosing an organ):
peri- + card- (heart) + ītis → pericarditis, itidis f — an inflammation of the membrane enveloping the heart, pericarditis.

Names of some inflammatory morbid conditions are formed without suffix -ītis, e. g.:

panaritium, i n — an inflammation in the nail fold, panaris (=panaritium);

pneumonia, ae f — an inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung, pneumonia
§ 138. NAMES OF MORBID CONDITIONS OF PHYSIOLOGICAL FLUIDS

Due to inflammatory processes some specific fluids may accumulate or be produced in cavities and tissues:

exsudātum, i n — a fluid extravasated into a cavity, exudate;
transsudātum, i n — any fluid that has passed through a membrane or the skin, transudate.

The abnormal accumulation of fluid in a tissue or cavity space is generally called hydrops, ōpis m — hydrops, dropsy. This noun is used with adjectives and any other noun:

hydrops vesicae felleae — fluid swelling in the gall bladder.

The presence of excessive fluid in the cavity of a definite part of the body is expressed by the prefix hydro- and a final root with the ending of the 1st, 2nd or 3rd declension:

hydrometra, ae f — an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus, hydrometra;
hydropericardium, i n — excessive accumulation of serous fluid in the pericardium, hydropericardium;
hydrarthrōsis, is f — a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint, hydralarthrosis.

Pus also refers to the fluids accumulated due to the inflammatory processes. The presence of pus is expressed in one-word terms by the initial root py- (Greek pus) and the final roots together with the grammar ending:

pyopericardium, i n — an accumulation of pus in the pericardium, pyopericardium;
pyuria, ae f — a condition in which pus is present in the urine.

The meaning “lymph” is denoted by the initial roots chyl- and lymph-.

The root chyl- is used if lymph is present in a cavity, in the blood or urine:
chylothōrax, ācis m — a condition in which there is an effusion of lymph into the thoracic cavity, chyllothorax;
chyluria, ae f — a condition in which the urine contains lymph, chyluria.

The root lymph- is used if lymph is considered as a part of lymphatic cells, glands and vessels:
lymphocytōsis, is f — an increase in the number of lymphocytes present in the blood, lymphocytosis;
lymphadenopahia, ae f — any morbid condition of the lymph gland, lymphadenopathy;
lymphangiītis, itĭdis f — an inflammation of lymphatic vessels, lymphangiitis.

Abnormal presence of blood in a cavity is expressed by the initial root haem- or haemat- which is added to a root and the final suffix -ōsis as well as any grammar ending of the 1st, 2nd or 3rd declension:
**haemarthrosis, is f** — an extravasation of blood into a joint, haemarthrosis;

**haematometra, ae f** — an accumulation of blood or menstrual fluid in the cavity of uterus, haematometra;

**haemotympanum, i n** — the presence of blood in the tympanic cavity, haemotympanum.

An abnormal state of blood circulation is mostly caused by embolaemia — a condition in which emboli are present in the blood. As a result, there occurs a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli — fragments of a blood clot, clumps of bacteria or other foreign bodies introduced into the circulation. Such a condition is named thromboembolism (thromboembolismus, i m or thromboembolia, ae f).

An abnormal cessation of the flow of blood, lymph or other physiological fluid is marked by the final root **-stāsis**:

**galactostāsis, is f** — an arrest or stagnation in the secretion of milk, galactostasis;

**lymphostāsis, is f** — cessation of the flow of lymph, lymphostasis.

### § 139. Table of Initial Roots

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek roots and their variants</th>
<th>Latin equivalents in dictionary form</th>
<th>English meaning</th>
<th>English word building elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| aden-                         | 1) glandūla, ae f  
2) adenoīdes, um f  
3) nodus lymphatīcus | 1) gland  
2) adenoids  
3) lymphatic node | aden- |
| aēr-, pneum-, pneumat-        | aēr, is m  
chole-          | air or a gas  
chole-           | aēr-, pneum-, pneumat- |
| cholecyst-                   | bilis, is f; fel, fallis n  
1) chyl-,  
2) lymph- | bile  
chyle or lymph | cholecyst- |
| col-, -colon                 | 1) intestīnum crassum  
2) colon | 1) large intestine  
2) colon | col-, -colon |
| cyst-                        | 1) saccus, i m  
2) vesīca, ae f  
3) vesīca urinaria | 1) sac  
2) bladder  
3) urinary bladder | cyst- |
| dacry-                       | lacrīma, ae f  
 dacryocyst- | tear  
lacus lacrimālis | dacry- |
| enter-                       | 1) intestīnum tenue  
2) intestīnum | 1) small intestine  
2) intestine | enter- |
<p>| galact-, -galactia           | lac, lactis n | milk | galact-, -galactia |
| hidr-                        | sudor, ōris m | sweat | hidr- |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek roots and their variants</th>
<th>Latin equivalents in dictionary form</th>
<th>English meaning</th>
<th>English word building elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hydr-</td>
<td>1) aqua, ae f  2) liquor cerebrospinālis 3) exsudātum, i n 4) transsudātum, i n</td>
<td>1) water  2) cerebrospinal fluid  3) exudate  4) transudate</td>
<td>hydr-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lip-, seb-</td>
<td>1) adeps, ĭpis m  2) sebum, i n</td>
<td>1) fatty tissue of the body  2) the fatty secretion of the sebaceous glands</td>
<td>lip-, seb-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>men-</td>
<td>mensis, is m</td>
<td>menses, the monthly discharge of blood from the uterus</td>
<td>men-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pan-, pant-</td>
<td>omnis, e</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>pan-, pant-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poli-</td>
<td>griseus, a, um</td>
<td>grey</td>
<td>poli-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>py-</td>
<td>pus, puris n</td>
<td>pus</td>
<td>py-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sial-, -sialia</td>
<td>1) salīva, ae f  2) ductus salivarii</td>
<td>1) saliva  2) salivary ducts</td>
<td>sial-, -sialia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ur-, -uria</td>
<td>1) urea, ae f  2) urīna, ae f</td>
<td>1) urea, the chief nitrogenous constituent of urine; 2) urine</td>
<td>ur-, -uria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xanth-</td>
<td>flavus, a, um</td>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>xanth-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 140. TABLE OF FINAL ROOTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Final root elements</th>
<th>English meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-chlorhydria</td>
<td>any state of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-chylia</td>
<td>secretion of the gastric juice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-menorrhoea</td>
<td>any condition of menses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-metra</td>
<td>any condition of the uterus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-rrhagia</td>
<td>hemorrhage (bleeding) in any part of the body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-rrhoea</td>
<td>profuse discharge of mucus or other fluid substance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-salivatio</td>
<td>secretion of saliva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-salpinx</td>
<td>any condition of the uterine tube</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-stāsis</td>
<td>cessation of the flow of any physiological fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-thōrax</td>
<td>any condition of the thorax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-uria</td>
<td>any condition of the urine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 141. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:
   aden-, chole-, col-, cyst-, dacry-, enter-, hidr-, lip-, men-, poli-, py-, xanth-.

2. Give the dictionary form of Latin words and Greek equivalents to the Latin ones:
   adeps, aër, aqua, flavus, griseus, lac, lacrīma, liquor cerebrospinālis, salīva, sudor, vesīca urinaria

3. Complete orally the dictionary form of each Latin noun and define the meaning of each word building element. Write down in English a full definition of each term and its English one-word equivalent:
achlorhydria; adenalgia; adenasthenia; aërobion; amenorrhoea; anaërobion; chylothórax; cholecystitis; cystorrhagia; dacrystostenosis; empyema.; enterocolitis; galactorrhoea; haemarthrosis; hidradenitis; hydromètra; hypochylia; hyposalivation; lipuria; lymphostasis; menalgia; megacolon; pantalgia; polimyelitis; pyogenus; pyopneumothorax; pyosalpinx; uraemia; xanthopsia; xanthosis

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

- a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened; acute inflammation of the gray matter of the brain; an accumulation of pus in the pericardium; a discharge of pus; a disturbance of color vision when everything appears yellow; an excessive flow of milk; any fluid that has passed through the membrane of the skin; a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint; inflammation in the nail fold; inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus; inflammation of the liver; narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland; profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose; the presence of air or gas within a thorax; the presence of blood in the tympanic cavity; a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli; the presence of blood in the urine

5. Give the Latin dictionary form and the full definition of each term in English:

- achylia; aerobic; anaerobic; chyluria; colonorrhagia; cystitis; dacrystorrhoea; dysmenorrhoea; dropsy; embolaemia; endometritis; enteromegalia; enterogastritis; galactostasis; haematosalpinx; hydrarthrosis; hidrosis; hydrometra; hypersalivation; hypogalactia; lymphangitis; lymphocytosis; menalgia; panaris; paranephritis; pericystitis; pneumonia; pneumohaemothorax; polioencephalopathy; pyuria; thromboembolism; tonsillitis

§ 142. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 22

Latin-English vocabulary

achlorhydria, ae f — a complete lack of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice, achlorhydria
adenalgia, ae f — a painful condition of a gland, adenalgia
adenasthenia, ae f — functional deficiency in a gland, adenasthenia
aërobion, i n — a microorganism which utilizes and assimilates atmospheric oxygen, aerobe (aerobian)
amenorrhoea, ae f — the pathological absence or stoppage of the menstrual discharge from the uterus, amenorrhoea
anaërobion, i n — a microorganism which is able to exist and multiply although deprived of either free oxygen or air, anaerobe
chylothórax, ācis m — the condition in which there is an effusion of the lymph into the thoracic cavity, chylothorax
cholecystitis, itidis f — inflammation of the gallbladder, cholecystitis
cystorrhagia, ae f — haemorrhage from the urinary bladder, cystorrhagia
dacryostenosis, is f — narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland,
dacryostenosis
empyema, atis n — an accumulation of pus in a cavity, empyema
enterocolitis, itidis f — an inflammed condition of the small intestine and
the colon, enterocolitis
galactorrhoea, ae f — an excessive flow of milk, galactorrhoea
haemarthrosis, osis f — extravasation of blood into a joint, haemarthrosis
hidradenitis, itidis f — inflammation of the sweat glands, hidradenitis
hydrometra, ae f — an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus,
hydrometra
hypochylia, ae f — a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened,
hypochylia
hyposalivatio, onis f — a condition in which there is an abnormal decrease in
the secretion of saliva, hyposalivation
lipuria, ae f — the presence of an oily emulsion or fat in the urine, lipuria
lymphostasis, is f — cessation of the flow of lymph, lymphostasis
megacolon, in — a condition in which there is a great dilatation of the large
intestine, megacolon
menalgia, ae f — painful menstruation, menalgia
pantalgia, ae f — pain affecting all parts of the body, pantalgia
polioencephalitis, itidis f — an acute inflammation of anterior horn cells of the spinal
cord due to polioviruses, polioencephalitis
pyogenic, a, um — forming or producing pus, pyogenic
pyopneumothorax, acis m — an inflammatory condition characterized by
the presence of purulent fluid and gas in a pleural cavity, pyopneumothorax
pyosalpinx, ngis f — inflammation of the uterine tube which has progressed
to pus formation, pyosalpinx
uraemia, ae f — the condition which is associated with the retention
of metabolic products in the blood and disturbance of acid-base ratio of
the latter, uraemia
xanthopsia, ae f — a disturbance of color vision, when everything appears
yellow, xanthopsia
xanthosis, is f — yellowish discoloration, especially of the skin, xanthosis

English-Latin vocabulary
achylia, absence of acid and pepsin from the gastric juice — achylia, ae f
a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened, hypochylia —
hypochylia, ae f
acute inflammation of the gray matter of the brain, polioencephalitis —
polioencephalitis, itidis f
a discharge of pus, pyorrhea — pyorrhoea, ae f
a disturbance of color vision when everything appears yellow, xanthopsia —
 xanthopsia, ae f
aerobe, a microorganism which utilizes and assimilates atmospheric oxygen —
aérobin, i n
an accumulation of pus in the pericardium, pyopericardium — pyopericardium,
i n
anaerobe, a microorganism which is able to exist and multiply although deprived
of either free oxygen or air — anaérobin, i n
aerobic, requiring gaseous oxygen in order to live — aërobicus, a, um
anaerobic, able to sustain life without free oxygen — anaërobicus, a, um
a narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis —
dacryostenōsis, is f
an excessive flow of milk, galactorrhoea — galactorrhoea, ae f
any fluid that has passed through the membrane of the skin, transudate —
transudātum, i n
a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint, hydrarthrosis — hydrarthrōsis, is f
a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by emboli,
thromboembolia (thromboembolism) — thromboëmbolia, ae f
(thromboëmbolismus, i m)
chyluria, the condition in which the urine contains lymph — chyluria, ae f
colonorrhagia, haemorrhage from the colon — colonorrhagia, ae f
cystitis, inflammation of the urinary bladder — cystītis, itīdis f
dacryorrhoea, an excessive flow of tears — dacryorrhoea, ae f
dropsy, an abnormal collection of fluid in tissue or cavity space — hydrops,
ōpis m
dysmenorrhoea, pain occurring in the back and lower abdomen at or about
the time of menses — dysmenorrhoea, ae f
embolaemia, a condition in which emboli are present in the blood —
embolaemia, ae f
endometritis, an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus —
endometrītis, itīdis f
enterogastritis, an inflammation of the small intestine and the stomach —
enterogastrītis, itīdis f
enteromegalia, an unusually large size of the intestine — enteromegalia, ae f
galactostasis, an arrest or stagnation in the secretion of milk — galactostāsis, is f
haematosalalpinx, a collection and retention of blood in an uterine tube —
haematosalalpinx, ngis f
hidrosis 1) a process of secreting sweat; 2) abnormally profuse sweating —
hidrōsis, is f
hydrarthrosis, a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint — hydrarthrōsis, is f
hydrometra, an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus — hydromētra, ae f
hypersalivation, excessive secretion of saliva — hypersalivation, ōnis f
hypogalactia, secretion of too small a quantity of milk — hypogalactia, ae f
inflammation in the nail fold, panaris — panaritium, i n
inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis — endometrītis, itīdis f
inflammation of the liver, hepatitis — hepatītis, itīdis f
lymphangitis, inflammation of lymphatic vessels — lymphangītis, itīdis f
lymphocytosis, an increase in the number of lymphocytes — lymphocytōsis, is f
panaris, an inflammation in the nail fold — panaritium, i n
paranephritis, an inflammatory condition involving the connective tissue
adjacent to the kidney — paranephrītis, itīdis f
pericystitis, an inflammation in which the structures around the urinary bladder
are affected — pericystītis, itīdis f
pneumonia, an inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung — pneumonia, ae f
pneumohaemothorax, an accumulation of gas or air and blood in the cavity
of the thorax — pneumohaemothōrax, ācis m
polioencephalopathy, any pathological condition of the gray matter of
the brain — polioencephalopathia, ae f
profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose, rhinorrhoea — rhinorrhoea, ae f
pyuria, a condition in which pus is present in the urine — pyuria, ae f
the presence of air or gas within a thorax, pneumothorax — pneumothōrax, ācis m
the presence of blood in the tympanic cavity, haemotympanum —
haemotympānum, i n
the presence of blood in the urine, haematuria — haematuria, ae f
thromboembolism, a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery,
by emboli — thromboembolismus, i m
tonsillitis, inflammation of the tonsil — tonsillītis, itīdis f

Lesson 23
ONE-WORD NAMES OF ENDOGENOUS PATHOLOGICAL CHANGES
AND MALFORMATIONS

§ 143. NAMES OF ABNORMAL ADHESIONS AND FISSURES

Conditions of abnormal adhesions of tissues are signified by means of the prefix sym- or syn- (before the consonants d, p, t or vowels) and the final roots defining the place of malformation:
symblephāron, i n — an adhesion of eyelid to the eyeball, symblepharon
syndactylia, ae f — a condition in which two or more fingers or toes are fused, syndactyly.

One-word names of fissures are formed by means of the final root -schīsis:
cystoschisis, is f — a congenital fissure of the urinary bladder, cystoschisis
gnathoschisis, is f — a congenital fissure in the maxilla, gnathoschisis

§ 144. NAMES OF PATHOLOGICAL CAVITIES

Abscesses, cysts and hernias usually belong to pathological cavities.

Abscess (absscessus, us m) is an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration. This Latin noun is used mainly with adjectives:

absscessus apicalis — apical abscess, an abscess at the apex of the root of a tooth
absscessus tonsillāris — tonsillar abscess, a suppurative condition of the parenchyma of a tonsil.

Cyst (cysta, ae f) is a cavity lined by a well-defined epithelium, fibrous or degenerating tissue. This noun both in Latin and English is mainly used in two-word terms with adjectives and nouns:
cysta choledōchi — choledochus cyst, cystic dilatation in the common bile duct
cysta pancreatĭca — pancreatic cyst, a cyst arising within or in close proximity to the pancreas.

Hernia (hernia, ae f) is the protrusion of an internal organ through a defect in the wall of the anatomical cavity in which it lies. The noun is used like the previous one with adjectives and nouns:
hernia cerĕbri — hernia of the brain, protrusion of the brain through a defect in the skull
hernia inguinālis — inguinal hernia, hernia in the inguinal canal

In one-word terms, the idea of hernia is expressed by the final root -cele:
gastrocēle, es f — hernia of the stomach, gasrocele
myocēle, es f — hernia of a muscle, myocele

§ 145. NAMES OF TUMORS

Names of tumors of a definite organ or tissues are formed by means of final suffix -ōma added to the initial root which indicates the localization of abnormal growth. All these names are nouns of the 3rd declension:

angióma, ātis n — angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or of lymphatic vessels
nephrōma, ātis n — nephroma, a tumor derived from renal substance
osseōma, ātis n — osseoma, a tumor of bone.

Some names of innocent tumors are formed without the suffix -oma:
polypus, i m polypus, a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface

verruca, ae f — a wart, a small circumscribed epidermal tumor.

Both nouns are used in multiword terms:

polypus laryngis — a polypus of larynx
verruca plana — a plane wart.

A malignant tumor or any malignant growth is named cancer — cancer, crīm. This name is used with the nouns and adjectives which define localization of the tumor:

cancer cutis — cancer of the skin
cancer gastris — cancer of the stomach
cancer osteolyticus — osteolytic cancer, a cancer which destroys the bone that it has invaded.

A malignant epithelial tumor is called carcinoma — carcinōma, ātis n. This noun is used with adjectives mostly:

carcinōma bronchogenīcum — a bronchogenic carcinoma, carcinoma originating from a bronchus
carcinōma cutaneum — carcinoma cutaneum, a squamous-celled carcinoma of the skin.

The name carcinoma can also be used as a final root of one-word terms:

adenocarcinōma, ātis n — a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma
chondrocarcinōma, ātis n — a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements, chondrocarcinoma.

§ 146. NAMES OF CONCREMENTS

A concrement is a pathological concretion — mostly a small mass which has become calcified in a cavity or in the tissue of a hollow anatomical structure. Such a concretion is denoted in Latin by the nouns concrementum, i n or calcŭlus, i m and an adjective defining the localization of the concretion:

concrementum nasāle — nasal calculus
calcŭlus dentālis — dental calculus

The names of these concretions may also be expressed by one-word terms by means of the final root -lithus (Greek lithos stone) added to initial roots: rhinolithus, i m = concrementum nasāle
odontolithus, i m = calcŭlus dentālis.

The condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body is called calculosis — calculōsis, is f. The formation of concretions is named lithiasis — lithiāsis, is f. The same word is used as a final root of several one-word terms:

broncholithiāsis, is f — a condition in which calculi occur in the lumina of bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis
cholecystolithiāsis, is f — a condition in which there are gall-stones in the gall bladder or bile duct, cholelithiasis
nephrolithiāsis, is f — a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis
uroli-thiāsis, is f — a morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis

§ 147. NAMES OF ABNORMAL HARDENING AND SOFTENING OF TISSUES
Abnormal hardening (induration) of a tissue is expressed by the initial root scler- (Greek skleros hard) or the final element -sclerosis:
sclerodesmia, ae f — abnormal induration of ligaments, sclerodesmia
osteosclerōsis, is f — hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis
Abnormal softening of a tissue is expressed by the final root -malacia (Greek malakia softness):
chondromalacia, ae f — a pathological softening of a cartilage, chondromalacia

§ 148. TABLE OF INITIAL ROOTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek roots and their variants</th>
<th>Latin equivalents in dictionary form</th>
<th>English meaning</th>
<th>English word building elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>carcin-</td>
<td>cancer, cri m</td>
<td>cancer</td>
<td>carcin-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hist-</td>
<td>textus, us m</td>
<td>tissue</td>
<td>hist-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lith-</td>
<td>calculūs, i m</td>
<td>stone</td>
<td>lith-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mening-</td>
<td>pia mater, arachnoidea mater, dura mater — the membranes which form the covering or sheaths of the spinal cord and brain</td>
<td>pia mater, arachnoidea mater, dura mater</td>
<td>mening-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>morph-</td>
<td>forma, ae f</td>
<td>form</td>
<td>morph-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>necr-</td>
<td>mortuus, a, um</td>
<td>dead, lifeless</td>
<td>necr-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ne(o)-</td>
<td>novus, a, um</td>
<td>new</td>
<td>ne(o)-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onc-</td>
<td>tumor, ōris m</td>
<td>tumor, swelling</td>
<td>onc-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onych-</td>
<td>unguis, is m</td>
<td>nail</td>
<td>onych-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pachy-</td>
<td>crassus, a, um</td>
<td>thick</td>
<td>pachy-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pyel-</td>
<td>pelvis renālis</td>
<td>pelvis of the kidney</td>
<td>pyel-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sarc-</td>
<td>caro, carnis f</td>
<td>flesh</td>
<td>sarc-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scler-</td>
<td>durus, a, um</td>
<td>hard, hardening</td>
<td>scler-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>splanchn-</td>
<td>viscus, ēris n; viscēra, um n</td>
<td>a viscus; the viscera</td>
<td>splanchn-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spondyl-</td>
<td>vertēbra, ae f</td>
<td>vertebra</td>
<td>spondyl-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sten-</td>
<td>strictus, a, um</td>
<td>narrow, narrowing</td>
<td>sten-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typhl-</td>
<td>caecum, i n</td>
<td>caecum</td>
<td>typhl-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uran-</td>
<td>palātum, i n</td>
<td>palate</td>
<td>palat-, uran-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Attention! Instead of the initial Greek root ura-n- the Latin root palat- can be used:
palatoplegia, ae f (palatoplegia, paralysis affecting the soft palate) = uranoplegia, ae f (uranoplegia)

palatoschisis, is f (palatoschisis, cleft palate, a congenital fissure in the midline of the hard palate) = uranoschisis, is f (uranoschisis)

§ 149. TABLE OF FINAL ROOTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Final root elements</th>
<th>English meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-carcinōma</td>
<td>a malignant epithelial tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-cele</td>
<td>hernia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lithiásis</td>
<td>the formation of concretions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lithus</td>
<td>a concretion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-malacia</td>
<td>pathological softening of an organ or tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-morphōsis</td>
<td>any state of the body form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-necrōsis</td>
<td>death of a portion of a tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-onychia</td>
<td>any abnormal condition of the nail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-porōsis</td>
<td>abnormal rarefaction of a bone by thinning of its trabeculae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-schĭsis</td>
<td>congenital fissure of a tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-sclerōsis</td>
<td>hardening of a tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-stenōsis</td>
<td>the constriction or narrowing of an orifice or the lumen of a hollow or tubular organ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 150. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:
   - carcin-, hist-, lith-, mening-, morph-, necr-, ne(o)-, onc-, onych-, pachy-, scler-, typhl-.

2. Give the dictionary form of Latin words and Greek equivalents to the Latin ones:
   - caecum, calcŭlus, cancer, crassus, durus, mortuus, palātum, pelvis renālis, strictus, textus, viscēra.

3. Complete orally the dictionary form of each Latin noun and define the meaning of each word building element. Write down in English a full definition of each term and its English one-word equivalent:
   - adenocarcinōma; broncholithiāsis; carcinomatōsis; cystoschisis; dacryostenōsis; gastrocēle; histolŷsis; meningiōma; metamorphōsis; micronychia; myocēle; necropneumonia; nephrolithiāsis; neoplasma; odontolĭthus; oncolŏgus; onychomycōsis; osteonecrōsis; osteoporōsis; pachyactyla; palatoplegia; pyelītis; sarcōma; sclerōma; splanchnosclerōsis; spondylītis; stenothōrax; typhlectasia; uranoschisis

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:
   - abnormal narrowing of the internal diameter of a vessel; a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements; any diseased condition of the viscera; calculus on the teeth; causing the growth of tumors; congenital cleft
of a vertebral arch or arches; congenital fissure of the urinary bladder; hardening
of bony spaces; herniation of the uterus; inflammation affecting the pelvis of
the kidney and the urinary bladder; inflammation of the membranes of the brain
or spinal cord; paralysis affecting the soft palate; pathological softening of
a cartilage; separation of a tissue as a result of its death; spasm of the caecum;
the formation of concretions; the origin, formation and development of body
tissue; the production and evolution of a form; the production of urinary calculi
and the morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system

5. Give the Latin dictionary form and the full definition of each term in
English:

- adiponecrosis; angioma; calculus; cancerogenic (carcinogenic);
carcinoma; cholecystolithiasis; chondroporosis; enterolithiasis; gnathoschisis;
macronychia; meningoencephalitis; necraemia; neoarthrosis; oesophagostenosis;
oncologist; oncotherapy; onychodystrophy; osteomalacia; pachycheilia;
polyposis; rhinolith; sarcomatosis; sclerodermatitis; sialolith; spondylopathy;
symblepharon; synphalangism; typhlocele

§ 151. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 23

Latin-English vocabulary

- adenocarcinōma, ātis n — a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and
  connective tissue, adenocarcinoma
- broncholithiāsis, is f — a condition in which calculi occur in the lumina of
  bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis
- carcinomatōsis, is f — a condition in which carcinoma is widely distributed
  throughout the body, carcinomatosis
- cystoschisis, is f — a congenital fissure of the urinary bladder, cystoschisis
- dacryostenōsis, is f — a narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland,
dacryostenosis
- gastrocēle, es f — a hernia of the stomach or of a portion which has become
  pouched, gastrocele
- histolύsis, is f — a spontaneous dissolution of living organic tissue, histolysis
- meningiōma, ātis n — a meningeal tumor, thought to arise from the arachnoidal
  villi, menigioma
- metamorphōsis, is f — a change of a form or structure, metamorphosis
- micronychia, ae f — a small nail or small nails, micronychia
- myocēle, es f — hernia of a muscle, myocele
- necropneumonia, ae f — gangrene of the lung, necropneumonia
- nephrolithiāsis, is f — a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or
  renal calculi, nephrolithiasis
- neoplasma, ātis n — any new and morbid formation of tissue, neoplasm
- odonthlĭthus, im — a calculus on the teeth, odontolith
- oncolŏgus, i m — a specialist treating tumors, oncologist
onychomycōsis, is f — an infection of nails caused by a fungus, onychomycosis
osteonecrōsis, is f — death of bony tissue, osteonecrosis
osteoporōsis, is f — a rarefaction of bone, osteoporosis
pachydactylia, ae f — abnormal thickening of a finger or toe, pachydactyly
palatoplegia, ae f — paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia
pyelītis, itĭdis f — an inflammation of the pelvis of the kidney, pyelitis
sarcōma, ātis n — a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives, sarcoma
sclerōma, ātis n — an area of indurated tissue, particularly in the mucous membrane of the nose or larynx, scleroma
splanchnosclerōsis, is f — hardening of any viscus, splanchnosclerosis
spondylītis, itĭdis f — an inflammation of the spine, spondilitis
stenothōrax, ācis m — a short, narrow thorax or chest, stenothorax
typhlectasia, ae f — a dilatation of the caecum, typhlectasia
uranoschĭsis, is f — cleft palate, a congenital fissure in the midline of the hard palate, uranoschisis

English-Latin vocabulary
a calculus on the teeth, odontolith — odontolithus, i m
a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements, chondroma — chondrōma, ātis n
a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma — adenocarcinōma, ātis n
a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis — nephrolithiāsis, is f
a congenital cleft of a vertebral arch, spondyloschisis — spondyloschīsis, is f
a congenital fissure of the urinary bladder, cystoschisis — cystoschīsis, is f
adiponecrosis, necrosis affecting the fatty tissue of the body — adiponecrōsis, is f
a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives, sarcoma — sarcōma, ātis n
a meningeal tumor thought to arise from the arachnoidal villi, meningioma — meningiōma, ātis n
an abnormal thickening of a finger or toe, pachydactyly — pachydactylia, ae f
angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or lymphatic vessels — angiōma, ātis, n
any diseased condition of the viscera, splanchnopathy — splanchnopathia, ae f
a separation of a tissue as a result of its death, necrolysis — necrolўsis, is f
calculation, a condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body — calculōsis, is f
cancerogenic (=carcinogenic), producing carcinoma — cancerogēnus, a, um
carcinoma, a malignant epithelial tumor — carcinōma, ātis n
cause the growth of tumors, oncogenous — oncogēnus, a, um
cholecystolithiasis, a condition in which there are gall-stones in the gall bladder or bile duct — cholecystolithiāsis, is f
donchodroporosis, a porous condition of cartilage shown in thinning of the cartilage and formation of spaces and sinuses — chondroporōsis, is f
enterolithiasis, formation of calculi or concretions in the intestine — enterolithiāsis, is f
gnathoschisis, a congenital fissure in the maxilla — gnathoschīsis, is f
hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis — osteosclerōsis, is f
herniation of the uterus, metrocele — metrocēle, es f
inflammation affecting the pelvis of the kidney and the urinary bladder, pyelocystitis — pyelocystītis, itīdis f
inflammation of the membranes of the brain or spinal cord, meningitis — meningītis, itīdis f
macronychia, excessive length or size of the nails — macronychia, ae f
meningoencephalitis, an inflammatory condition of the brain and its meninges — meningoencephalītis, itīdis f
necraemia, a condition in which the blood loses its vitality — necraemia, ae f
neoaarthrosis, an artificial joint implanted by the surgical operation — neoarthrōsis, is f
oesophagostenosis, a narrowing of the oesophagus — oesophagostenōsis, is f
oncologist, a specialist treating tumorous diseases — oncolŏgus, i m
oncotherapy, the treatment of tumours — oncotherapia, ae f
onychodystrophy, malformation of the nails due to impaired nutrition — onychodystrophia, ae f
osteomalacia, softening of the bones — osteomalacia, ae f
pachycheilia, abnormal thickness or swelling of the lips — pachycheilia, ae f
paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia — palatoplegia, ae f
pathological softening of cartilage, chondromalacia — chondromalacia, ae f
polyposis, a condition in which the colon is studded with polypi growing from the mucous membrane — polypōsis, ls f
production of urinary calculi and a morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis — urolithiāsis, is f
rhinolith, a concretion in the cavity of the nose — rhinolĭthus, i m
sarcomatosis, a condition in which a number of sarcomata develop here and there on the body surface — sarcomatōsis, is f
sclerodermatitis, an inflammation and induration of the skin — sclerodermaṭītis, itīdis f
sialolith, a salivary calculus — sialolĭthus, i m
spasm of the caecum, typhlospasm — typhlospasmus, i m
spondylopathy, any disease of the vertebrae — spondylopathia, ae f
symblepharon, adhesion of the eyelid to the eyeball — symblephāron, i n
synphalangism, a condition in which the joints of certain fingers or toes are fused — synphalangismus, i m
the formation of concretions, lithiasis — lithiāsis, is f
the origin, formation and development of body tissue, histogenesis — histogenĕsis, is f
the production and evolution of a form, morphogenesis — morphogenĕsis, is f
typhlocele, a hernia involving the caecum — typhlocēle, es f

Lesson 24
 NAMES OF DEFORMATIONS OF TISSUE CAUSED BY EXOGENOUS FACTORS. NAMES OF SURGICAL OPERATIONS

§ 152. GENERAL NAMES OF TISSUE DEFORMATIONS CAUSED BY DIFFERENT EXOGENOUS FACTORS

The most known general names of tissue deformations are the following one-word terms:
  *deformatio, ōnis f* — a destruction of the form, deformation
  *laesio, ōnis f* — an injury, damage suffered by the body
  *trauma, ātis n* — a trauma, injury
  *vulnus, ĕris n* — a wound, any interruption by violence or by surgery, in the continuity of the external surface of the body or of the surface of any internal organ

More definite names are the following one-word terms:
  *avulsio, ōnis f* — avulsion, a forcible removal of a portion from a hollow structure
  *combustio, ōnis f* — burn, an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat
  *congelatio, ōnis f* — congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition, caused by freezing
  *commotio, ōnis f* — a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure
  *compressio, ōnis f* — compression, the process of decreasing the volume and increasing the density of the body by means of force applied externally
  *dislocatio, ōnis f* — a dislocation, an abnormal displacement of one bone upon another in a joint
  *ectopia, ae f* — ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or its part
  *fractūra, ae f* — a fracture, a break in the continuity of a bone
  *luxatio, ōnis f* — a luxation, a dislocation of a bone
  *ruptūra, ae f* — a rupture, the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of the bone or another anatomical structure. With the same meaning, but only in one-word terms, the final root *-rrhexis* (Greek rhēxis a break) is used:
  *metrorrhhexis, is f* — metrorrhhexis, rupture of the uterus
ophthalmorrhaxis, is f — ophthalmorrhaxis, rupture of the eyeball
prolapsus, us m — prolapse, a sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part. With the same meaning the final root -ptōsis is used:
gastroptōsis, is f — gasroptosis, a downward displacement of the stomach
splenoptōsis, is f — splenoptosis, a prolapse of the spleen

§ 153. NAMES OF SURGICAL OPERATIONS

The most common names of surgical operations are the following:
operatio, ōnis f — an operation, surgical intervention upon a part of the body
amputatio, ōnis f — an amputation, the surgical removal of a limb or a portion of a limb or of any other appendage
extirpatio, ōnis f — an extirpation, a removal of the entire pathological structure, organ or part
extractio, ōnis f — an extraction, the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body
implantatio, ōnis f — an implantation, the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body
punctūra, ae f (punctio, ōnis f) — a puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it. In one-word terms, the final root -centēsis corresponds to the two-word terms which include the noun puncture and the second noun signifying the site of this operation, e. g.:
punctūra thorācis = thoracocentēsis  punctūra pulmōnis = pneumocentēsis
replantatio, ōnis f — re plantation, the replacement a separated by accident part of some anatomical structure back to its natural place.
transplantatio, ōnis f — a transplantation, the operation of transference of a tissue or an organ from one place to an other with the aim of improving or renewing the function
sectio, ōnis f — a section, the act of cutting

§ 154. PREFIXES WIDELY USED IN SURGICAL NAMES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin prefix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Latin example</th>
<th>English equivalent and its meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a-, ab-</td>
<td>away, from</td>
<td>avulsio, ōnis f</td>
<td>avulsion, the forcible removing a portion from a hollow structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>aberratio, ōnis f</td>
<td>aberration, a deviation from the normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de(s)-</td>
<td>away, from</td>
<td>decapsulatio, ōnis f</td>
<td>decapsulation, surgical removal of a capsule or sheath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>descensus, us m</td>
<td>descent, the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin prefix</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td>Latin example</td>
<td>English equivalent and its meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dis-</td>
<td>apart, separation</td>
<td>disarticulatio, ōnis f</td>
<td>disarticulation, separation or amputation in a joint without cutting through bone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>im-, in-</td>
<td>in, into</td>
<td>implantātum, i n</td>
<td>implant, any piece of tissue for use as a graft invasion, the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e-, ex-</td>
<td>from, out of</td>
<td>extractio, ōnis f</td>
<td>extraction, the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body evisceration, removal of the contents of an organ or its part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>re-</td>
<td>again</td>
<td>replantatio, ōnis f</td>
<td>replantation, the replacement a separated by accident part of some anatomical structure back to its natural place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trans-</td>
<td>through, across</td>
<td>transplantatio, ōnis f</td>
<td>transplantation, the operation of transfer of tissue from one site to another</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 155. TABLE OF INITIAL ROOTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek roots and their variants</th>
<th>Latin equivalents in dictionary form</th>
<th>English meaning</th>
<th>English word building elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blephar-</td>
<td>palpēbra, ae f</td>
<td>eyelid</td>
<td>blephar-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chir-</td>
<td>manus, us f</td>
<td>hand</td>
<td>chir-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colp-</td>
<td>vagīna, ae f</td>
<td>vagina</td>
<td>colp-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cry-</td>
<td>gelu, us n</td>
<td>cold</td>
<td>cry-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crypt-</td>
<td>latens, ntis</td>
<td>hidden</td>
<td>crypt-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desm-</td>
<td>ligamentum, i n</td>
<td>ligament</td>
<td>desm-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>embry-</td>
<td>1) embryo, ōnis m</td>
<td>1) embryo, a living organism from the fertilized ovum to the first 8 weeks of intrauterine life</td>
<td>embry-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2) fetus, us m</td>
<td>2) fetus, a living organism after first 8 weeks of intrauterine life</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kerat-</td>
<td>cornea, ae f</td>
<td>1) cornea</td>
<td>kerat-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2) the horny layer of the skin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lapar-</td>
<td>abdōmen, ōnis n</td>
<td>abdomen</td>
<td>lapar-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pneum-, pneumon-</td>
<td>pulmo, ōnis m</td>
<td>lung</td>
<td>pneum-, pneumon-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>salping-</td>
<td>1) tuba uterīna</td>
<td>1) the uterine tube</td>
<td>salping-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2) tuba auditīva (=tuba auditoria)</td>
<td>2) the pharyngotympanic tube (=auditory tube)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ten-</td>
<td>tendo, ōnis m</td>
<td>tendon</td>
<td>ten-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top-</td>
<td>locus, i m</td>
<td>place</td>
<td>top-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 156. TABLE OF FINAL ROOTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Final roots elements</th>
<th>English meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-chirurgia</td>
<td>surgical operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-centēsis</td>
<td>tapping or puncture of a cavity, -centesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-dēsis</td>
<td>operative fixation of a structure, -desis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ectomia</td>
<td>amputation or excision of an organ or its part, -ectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-implantatio</td>
<td>the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body, -implantation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-lysis</td>
<td>surgical freeing of a tissue from adhesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-pexia</td>
<td>surgical fixation by means of sutures, -pexis, -pexy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-plastica</td>
<td>an operation dependent upon the transposition of skin or other tissue, -plasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-rrhaphia</td>
<td>the suturing together of the cut or torn edges of a wound, -rraphy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-rrhexis</td>
<td>rupture or bursting of an organ or vessel, -hexis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-stŏma</td>
<td>an artificial opening created by surgical operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-stomia</td>
<td>creation of an artificial opening, -stomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tomia</td>
<td>operative cutting, incision or section, -tomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-transplantatio</td>
<td>the operation of transference of a tissue or an organ from one place to another with the aim of improving or renewing the function, -transplantation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§ 157. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:
   blephar-, chir-, colp-, cry-, crypt-, desm-, embryo-, kerat-, lapar-, pneum-, salping-, ten-, top-.

2. Give the dictionary form of Latin words and Greek equivalents to the Latin ones:
   abdōmen, cornea, embryo, gelu, latens, locus, manus, palpĕbra, pulmo, tendo, tuba uterīna.

3. Complete orally the dictionary form of each Latin noun and define the meaning of each word building element. Write down in English the full definition of each term and its English one-word equivalent:
   avulsio; blepharītis; blepharoplastĭca; colpotomia; combustio; cryochirurgia; cryotherapia; cryptophthalmia; decapsulatio; descensus; desmorrhēxis; desmurgia; disarticulatio; embryologia; embryotomia; evisceratio; gastrostŏma; hyperkeratōsis; implantatio; implantātum; keratotomia; laparoscopia; laparogastrostomia; pneumocentēsis; prolapsus; pneumoĕmpyēma; replantatio; resectio; salpingectomia; salpingolŏsis; spondylodēsis; tenorrhaphia; tenotomia; thoracocentēsis; toponeurōsis

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:
   a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure; adenoma of the eyelid; a medical practitioner skilled in general surgery, who specializes in the operative
treatment of diseases of the nervous system; a neoplasm originating in embryonic elements or blighted ovum; any disease affecting ligaments; any morbid condition affecting the lungs; any plastic operation to repair or reconstruct the urinary bladder; any plastic surgical operation on the vagina; a tumor consisting of connective-tissue element; incision of the abdominal wall and excision of the uterus; inflammation of abdominal muscles; inflammation of the cornea; polypus of the vagina; puncture of the cornea; removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part; retention of the menstrual flow due to congenital acquired genital-uteal stenosis; surgical operation on small structures with the aid of a microscope; the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body; the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host; the operation for the relief of hernia and the resultant reduction of the size of the latter; the operation of removal of the adenoid growth by excision; the operation of transference of a tissue of an organ from one place to another with the aim of improving or renewing a function; the surgical establishment of a permanent or semipermanent opening into the urinary bladder; total or partial surgical removal of diseased lung tissue; use of cold or freezing as a therapeutic measure

5. Give the full definition of each term and its Latin dictionary form:

arthrocentesis; autoplasty; blepharotony; colpocystotomy; colposomyeactomy; colphysterectomy; congelaition; cryosurgery; cryptolith; cryptopsoriasis; desmalgia; desmotomy; dislocation; ectopia; embryectomy; embryopathyology; implant; implantation; keratomycosis; keratoplasty; oesophagostoma; pneumorrhaphy; pneumotomy; puncture; salpingogram; salpingopexy; tenodesis; tenolysis; tonsillotomy; topography; topophobia

§ 158. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 24

Latin-English vocabulary

avulsio, ōnis f — a forcible removing a portion from a hollow structure, avulsion
blepharītis, itidis f — an inflammation of the eyelids, blepharitis
blepharoplastica, ae f — a plastic operation for restoration of an eyelid or any part of it, blepharoplasty
colpotomia, ae f — any cutting operation on the vagina, colpotomy
combustio, ōnis f — an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat, burn
cryochirurgia, ae f — surgical procedures in which tissue is destroyed by freezing, cryosurgery
cryotherapia, ae f — the science of the use of cold as a therapeutic measure, cryotherapy
cryptophthalmia, ae f — a congenital adhesion of the eyelids so that the eyeballs can not be seen, cryptophthalmia
decapsulatio, ōnis f — a surgical removal of a capsule or sheath, decapsulation
descensus, us m — the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part, descent
desmorrhexis, is f — rupture of a ligament, desmorrhexis
desmurgia, ae f — the science of applying ligatures or bandages to a part, desmurgy
disarticulatio, ōnis f — a separation or amputation at a joint, without cutting through bone, disarticulation
embryologia, ae f — a branch of biological science which is concerned with the origin and development of the embryo from the ovum to the stage of extra-uterine life, embryology
embryotomia, ae f — a dissection of an embryo or fetus, embryotomy
evisceratio, ōnis f — a removal of the contents of an organ or part, evisceration
gastrostŏma, ătis n — a natural or artificial gastric fistula, gastrostoma
hyperkeratōsis, is f — a hypertrophy of the stratum corneum of the skin, hyperkeratosis
implantatio, ōnis f — the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body, implantation
keratotomia, ae f — making an incision into the cornea, keratotomy
laparoscopia, ae f — the act or process of examining the peritoneal cavity and its contents by means of a laparoscope, laparoscopy
laparogastrostomia, ae f — the operation to create an artificial opening in the stomach, laparogastrostomy
pneumocentēsis, is f — a lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of a cavity, pneumocentesis
pneumoĕmpyēma, ĕtis n — the presence of pus and gas within the pleural space, pneumoĕmpyema
prolapsus, us m — the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part, prolapse
replantatio, ōnis f — the replacement a separated by accident part of some anatomical structure back to its natural place, a replantation
resectio, ōnis f — a surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e.g. jaw, stomach, etc., a resection
salpingectomia, ae f — an excision of an uterine tube, salpingectomy
salpingolŭsis, is f — breaking-down of adhesions in an uterine tube, salpingolysis
spondylodĕsis, is f — the operation of fusion of the spine, usually by a bone graft, spondylodesis
tenorrhaphia, ae f — an operation for the suturing of the divided ends of a tendon, tenorrhaphy
tenotomia, ae f — the cutting of a tendon, tenotomy
thoracocentēsis, is f — a puncture of the wall of the thorax to remove fluid, thoracocentesis
toponeurōsis, is f — localized neurosis, a functional derangement in any part of the body, toponeurosis

**English-Latin vocabulary**

- a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure — commotio, ōnis f
- adenoma of the eyelid, blepharoadenoma — blepharoadenōma, ātis n
- a medical practitioner skilled in general surgery who specializes in the operative treatment of diseases of the nervous system, a neurosurgeon — neurochirurgus, i m
- a neoplasm originating in embryonic elements or blighted ovum, an embryoneoplasm — embryoneoplasma, ātis n
- any disease affecting the ligaments, desmopathia — desmopathia, ae f
- any morbid condition affecting the lungs, pneumopathy — pneumopathia, ae f
- any plastic operation to repair or reconstruct the urinary bladder, cystoplasty — cystoplastica, ae f
- any plastic surgical operation on the vagina, coloplasty — coloplastica, ae f
- a polypus of the vagina, colopolypus, i m
- a prolapse, the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part — prolapsus, us m
- a puncture of the cornea, keratocentesis — keratocentēsis, is f
- arthrocentesis, the surgical procedure of puncturing a joint — arthrocentēsis, is f
- a surgical operation on small structures with the aid of a microscope, microsurgery — microchirurgia, ae f
- a tumor consisting of connective tissue, desmoneoplasm — desmoneoplasma, ātis n
- autoplasty, the repair of a diseased or injured tissue or organ by the material taken from another part of the body — autoplastica, ae f
- blepharotony, an incision of an eyelid — blepharotomia, ae f
- colpocystotomy, a surgical incision into the urinary bladder through the wall of the vagina — colpocystotomia, ae f
- colpolhysteropexy, the operative fixation of the uterus through the vagina — colpolhysteropexia, ae f
- colpomyomectomy, a removal of a myoma from the uterus by the vaginal route — colpomyomectomia, ae f
- congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition, caused by freezing — congelatio, ōnis f
- cryosurgery, surgical procedures in which tissue is destroyed by freezing — cryochirurgia, ae f
- cryptolith, a calculus contained in a crypt — cryptolithus, i m
- cryptopsoriasis, hidden, latent psoriasis — cryptopsoriāsis, is f
- desmalgia, pain in a ligament — desmalgia, ae f
dislocation, abnormal displacement of one bone upon another in a joint — dislocatio, ōnis f

ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or its part — ectopia, ae f

embryectomy, the surgical removal of the embryo — embryectomia, ae f

embryopathology, the branch of pathology concerned with defective or abnormal development of embryo — embryopathologia, ae f

implant, any piece of tissue used as a graft — implantātum, i n

incision of the abdominal wall and excision of the uterus, laparohysteroectomy — laparohysteroectomia, ae f

inflammation of the abdominal muscles, laparomyositis — laparomyosītis, itidis f

keratomeycosis, a disease of cornea caused by a fungus — keratomeycōsis, is f

keratooplasty, plastic surgery on the cornea — keratoplastica, ae f

oesophagogostoma, any opening into the esophagus apart from the normal entrance and exit — oesophagogōstoma, ātis n

ophthalmorrhexis, rupture of the eyeball — ophthalmorrhexis, is f

pneumocentesis, a lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of the cavity — pneumocentēsis, is f

pneumoempyema, the presence of pus and gas within the pleural space — pneumoëmpyēma, ātis n

pneumorrhaphy, the operation of suturing a wound of the lung — pneumorrhaphia, ae f

pneumotomy, making an incision into the lung — pneumotomia, ae f

puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it — punctūra, ae f; punctio, ōnis f

removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part, amputation — amputatio, ōnis f

retention of the menstrual flow due to congenital or acquired genital canal stenosis, cryptomenorrhoea — cryptomenorrhoea, ae f

removal of an entire pathological structure, an organ or part, extirpation — extirpatio, ōnis f

salpingogram, the radiograph made during the radiographic visualization of the uterus and uterine tubes — salpingogramma, ātis n

salpingopexy, surgical fixation of the uterine tube — salpingopexia, ae f

tenodesis, operative fixation of a tendon — tenodēsis, is f

tenolysis, the freeing of a tendon from adhesions — tenolŷsis, is f

the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body, extraction — extractio, ōnis f

the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host, invasion — invasio, ōnis f
the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving
the function of any part of the body — implantatio, ōnis f
the operation for the relief of hernia and the resultant reduction of the latter,
herniotomia — herniotomia, ae f
the operation of removal of the adenoid growth by excision, adenotomia —
adenotomia, ae f
the operation of transference of a tissue of an organ from one place to an other
with the aim of improving or renewing of a function, transplantation —
transplantatio, ōnis f
the surgical establishment of a permanent or semipermanent opening into
the urinary bladder, cystostomy — cystostomia, se f
tonsillotomy, the surgical operation for removal of a part of a tonsil —
tonsillotomia, ae f
topography, the anatomical description of any particular part of the body —
topographia, ae f
topophobia, unreasoned fear of certain places — topophobia, ae f
total or partial surgical removal of diseased lung tissue, pneumonectomy —
pneumonectomia, ae f
use of cold or freezing as a therapeutic measure, cryotherapy — cryotherapia,
ae f

Lesson 25
MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 1
§ 159. THE STRUCTURE AND VOCABULARY
OF MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS

Multiword terms are widely used in medical diagnoses. Any multiword
term consists, as a rule, of two or three words. The noun containing the cardinal
information of the term is placed first, and then one or two nouns or one or two
adjectives follow. The second and third nouns indicate the localization of
the diseased organ or tissue; adjectives give qualitative and quantitative
characteristics of the morbid condition:
infarctus cerēbri — cerebral infarct, an infarct of cerebral tissue due to
failure of blood supply resulting from vascular thrombosis, embolism or spasm
tachycardia ventricŭli sinistri — tachycardia of the left ventricle,
abnormally rapid rate of the left ventricle
anaemia haemorrhagĭca — haemorrhagic anaemia, anaemia caused by
acute or chronic loss of blood because of whatever cause
myocardītis bacterialis acuta — acute bacterial myocarditis, acute
inflammation of the myocardium due to invasion of bacteria

The combination of a noun and an adjective after the first noun of the term
can be present too:
**cirrhōsis biliāris infantium** — biliary cirrhosis of children, cirrhosis of young children due to congenital anomalies of the bile ducts

**luxatio coxae congenĭta** — congenital dislocation of the hip

To sum up, we can say that multiword clinical terms are built similar to anatomical ones. First of all, the dictionary form of every word should be given. After that, the term is built according to the already known rules.

### § 160. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into English:
   - abdōmen acūtum; diabētes mellītus; diagnōsis aetiologĭca; febris continua; fetor ex ore sive halitōsis; herpes labiālis; indigestio gastris; *infarctus* thrombotĭcus; insufficientia renālis chronĭca; morbus maculōsus neonatōrum; palpatio et percussio hepōris; polyuria diabetĭca; prophylaxis morbōrum allergicŏrum; syndrŏmum unguīum flavŏrum; toxicōses gravidārum; vitium cordis congenĭtum

2. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into Latin:
   - acute suppurative *bronchitis*; allergic *stomatitis*; cardinal *symptoms*; cerebrospinal hereditary *paralysis*; chronic superficial *dermatitis*; *collapse* of the lung; *endogenous eczema*; *exogenous tuberculosis*; hypoglycaemic *coma*; intermittent hepatic fever; plasma *transfusion*; primary atypical *pneumonia*; simple *urethritis*; spongiform subacute *encephalopathy*; *syndrome* of the cerebral peduncle; tissue *emphysema*; ultrasonic *tomography*

### § 161. Vocabulary to Lesson 25

**Latin-English vocabulary**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acūtus, a, um</td>
<td>acute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aetiologĭcus, a, um</td>
<td>aetiologic, based on the aetiology — the science of the investigation of the cause or origin of any phenomenon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chronicus, a, um</td>
<td>chronic, long continued</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>congenĭtus, a, um</td>
<td>congenital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continuus, a, um</td>
<td>continued</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diabētes, ae m</td>
<td>diabetes, a group of diseases in which there is polyuria and a disturbed metabolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diabetĭcus, a, um</td>
<td>diabetic, suffering from or relating to diabetes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diagnōsis, is f</td>
<td>diagnosis, medical denotion of the disease from which a person suffers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>febris, is f</td>
<td>fever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foetor, ōris m</td>
<td>fetor, a foul odour or stench</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gravĭda, ae f</td>
<td>gravida, a woman who is pregnant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>halitōsis, is f</td>
<td>halitosis, fetid or offensive breath</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
herpes, ētis m — herpes, inflammation of the skin or mucous membrane, with clusters of deep-seated vesicles
indigestio, ōnis f — indigestion, any disturbance of the normal process of digestion
infarctus, us m — infarct (infarction), a wedge-shaped area of dead tissue, with or without haemorrhage, produced by the obstruction of an end artery
insufficientia, ae f — insufficiency, the state of being inadequate to perform normal function
mellītus, a, um (diabētes) — mellitus (diabetes), characterized by a high — fasting blood sugar
maculōsus, a, um — a maculate, marked by maculae
morbus, i m — a disease
neonātus, a, um — a newly born child
palpatio, ōnis f — palpation, the method of physical examination in which the hands are applied to the surface of the body, so that by sense of touch information is obtained about the condition of inner organs
percussio, ōnis f — percussion, the art of striking the thoracic or abdominal wall in order to produce sound vibration from which the nature of the underlying structures can be assessed
polyuria, ae f — polyuria, increase in the amount of the urine exerted
prophylaxis, is f — prophylaxis, the art of preventing disease
sive — or
syndrŏmum, i n — a syndrome, a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease
thrombotīcus, a, um — thrombotic, characterized or caused by thrombosis
toxicōsis, is f — toxicosis, the pathological condition caused by the adsorption of poison
vitium, in — a defect or a vice, vitium

**English-Latin vocabulary**

acute — acūtus, a, um
alimentary — alimentarius, a, um
a symptom, the consciousness of a disturbance in a bodily function — symptōma, ātis n
a syndrome, a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease — syndrŏmum, i n
a tissue — textus, us m
a transfusion, the introduction into the blood vessels of the circulatory system of sterile fluids such as blood, plasma, serum and other solutions — transfusio, ōnis f
cardinal — cardinālis, e
chronic — chronīcus, a, um
collapse, a state of extreme weakness with physical and mental depression — collapse, us m
coma, the state of complete loss of consciousness from which the patient cannot be roused by any ordinary external stimulus — coma, ātis n
eczema, a non-contagious inflammatory disease of the skin with much itching and burning — eczēma, ātis n
emphysema, a condition in which the alveoli of the lungs are dilated — emphysēma, ātis n
endogenous, having origin within the organism — endogēnus, a, um
exogenous, belonging to aetiological factors outside the organism — exogēnus, a, um
fever — febris, is f
hereditary — hereditarius, a, um
hypoglycaemic, relating or belonging to, or bringing about hypoglycaemia, a low blood sugar concentration — hypoglycaemīcus, a, um
intermittent, coming and going at intervals — intermittens, ntis
paralysis, loss of motor power due to a functional or organic disorder of neural or neuromuscular mechanismus — paralysis, is f
plasma, the fluid portion of the blood in which the blood corpuscles are suspended — plasma, ātis n
pneumonia, an inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung — pneumonia, ae f
peduncle — peduncūlus, i m
primary — primarius, a, um
spongiform, having resemblance to a sponge — spongiformis, e
subacute, (disease) running a moderately rapid and severe course for which the word acute would not be appropriate — subacūtus, a, um
suppurative, pus-forming — suppuratīvus, a, um
tomography, body-section radiography — tomographia, ae f
ultrasonic, ultrasound — ultrasonarius, a, um

Lesson 26
MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 2

§ 162. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into English:

alopecia occipitālis neonatōrum; gastrorrhoea continua chronica; granulōma benignum glandūlae thyroideae; infectio latens; infammatio bacteriālis; insufficientia arteriārum mesentericārum; lymphangīoma simplex; melanōsis irĭdis; myasthenia laryngis; myelītis traumatīca; neuralgia faciālis vera; neuritīs puerperālis; osteītis deformans; osteōma spongiosum; prolapsus recti; psychōsis senīlis; situs viscerum inversus; spasmus intestinōrum
2. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into Latin:

- acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS); benign lymphocytic meningitis; cerebral oedema; chronic glossitis with anaemia; diffuse goitre; direct metastasis; dropsy of the gall bladder; fetal gigantism; gminated composite odontome; intravenous narcosis; infective hepatitis; monostotic fibrous dysplasia; odontogenic fibroma; pelvic haematoma; postoperative thrombosis; psychogenic headache; secondary glaucoma; senile osteoporosis; viral enteritis

§ 163. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 26

Latin-English vocabulary

alopecia, ae f — alopecia, loss of hair
bacteriālis, e — bacterial, belonging to or consisting of bacteria
benignus, a, um — benign
continuus, a, um — continued
deformans, ntis — deforming
gastrorrhoea, ae f — gastrorrhoea, the secretion by the stomach of an abnormally large quantity of gastric juice or of mucus
granulōma, ātis n — a granuloma, a tumour composed of granulation tissue
infectio, ōnis f — an infection, the invasion of a pathogenic organism into the body and its subsequent multiplication
inflammatio, ōnis f — an inflammation
insufficientia, ae f — insufficiency
inversus, a, um — inverse
latens, ntis — hidden
lymphangiōma, ātis n — lymphangioma, a tumor formed of lymphatic tissue
mesenterĭcus, a, um — mesenteric
melanōsis, is f — melanosis, an abnormal deposition of the black pigment (melanin) in the skin or other tissues
myasthenia, ae f — myasthenia, weakness of muscles from whatever cause
myelītis, itĭdis f — myelitis, an inflammation of the bone marrow
neuralgia, ae f — neuralgia, a painful affection of the nerves due to functional disturbances or to neuritis
neurītis, itĭdis f — neuritis, an inflammation of a nerve
osteītis, itĭdis f — osteitis, an inflammation of a bone due to infection or injury
osteōma, ātis n — osteoma, an innocent tumor of a bone
prolapsus, us m — prolapse, the sinking down or protrusion of a part or viscus
psychōsis, is f — psychosis, any kind of mental disorder
puerperālis, e — puerperal
senīlis, e — senile
situs, us m — a position, a site
spasmus, i m — a spasm, a sudden, powerful, involuntary contraction of a muscle
spongiosus, a, um — spongy, (spongyous), full of small holes, like a sponge
traumaticus, a, um — traumatic
verus, a, um — true
viscus, ēris n — a viscus or viscera, the internal organs of the body which are closely related to the great serous cavities — pleural, pericardial or peritoneal

English-Latin vocabulary

acquired — acquisītus, a, um
benign — benignus, a, um
composite — compositus, a, um
deficiency — deficientia, ae f
diffuse — diffūsus, a, um
direct — directus, a, um
dropsy — hydrops, ōpis m
dysplasia, abnormal development of tissue — dysplasia, ae f
enteritis, inflammation of the mucous membrane of the intestines — enterītis, itĭdis f
fetal — fetalis, e
fibroma, an innocent tumor composed chiefly of connective tissue — fibrōma, ātis n
fibrous — fibrōsus, a, um
geminated — geminātus, a, um
gigantism, a condition of excessive tallness — gigantismus, i m
glaucoma, a condition of increased intraocular pressure and its consequences — glaucōma, ātis n
glossitis, an inflammation of the tongue — glossītis, itīdis f
goitre, an enlargement of the thyroid gland — struma, ae f
headache — dolor (ōris m) capitis
haematoma, a tumor or swelling composed of blood — haematōma, ātis n
immune — immūnus, a, um
immunodeficiency — immunodeficientia, ae f
infective — infectīvus, a, um
intravenous — intravenōsus, a, um
lymphocytic — lymphocytīcus, a, um
metastasis, the transfer of disease from its primary site to distant parts of the body by blood vessels, lymphatics or direct contiguity — metastāsis, is f
monostotic, pertaining to a single bone — monostotīcus, a, um
narcosis, stupor produced by drugs and tending to insensibility and paralysis — narcōsis, is f
odontome, a solid or cystic tumour occurring in the jaws which is derived from cells concerned in tooth development — odontōma, ātis n
odontogenic, relating to the development of the teeth — odontogēnus, a, um
oedema, the presence of excessive amounts of fluid in the intercellular tissue spaces of the body — oedēma, ātis n
osteoporosis, a rarefaction of bone — osteoporōsis, is f
postoperative — postoperatīvus, a, um
psychogenic, developing or originating because of mental causes — psychogēnus, a, um
secondary — secundarius, a, um
senile — senīlis, e
thrombosis, intravascular coagulation during life, producing a thrombus — thrombōsis, is f
viral — virālis, e

Lesson 27
MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 3

§ 164. EXERCISES

1. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into English:
   abscessus gingivālis; avulsio nervi phrenĭci; calcŭlus venōsus; carcinōma in situ; combustio thermālis faciēi; commottio cerēbri; congelatio digitōrum pedis dextri; ectopia thermālis faciēi; erosio cervīcis utēri; extractio corpŏris aliēni; polypi laryngis; punctio lumbālis; ruptūra ligamentōrum hepatis; sectio cadavēris; transplantātum corneae; ulcus perfŏrans duodēni; verrūcae planae

2. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into Latin:
   breast amputation; chemical burn of the oesophagus; closed fracture of the right femur; concussion of the retina; evisceration of the eye; functional aortic stenosis; internal injury; lung calculi; open operation; partial ophthalmoplegy; resection of a joint and a rib; splenic puncture; subcunaneous wound; replantation of the left hand; tendon transplantation; traumatic erythema; ulceration of the stomach

§ 165. VOCABULARY TO LESSON 27

Latin-English vocabulary
abscessus, us m — abscess, an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration
aliēnus, a, um — foreign
avulsio, ōnis f — avulsion, the forcible removing a portion from a follow structure
combustio, ōnis f — burn, an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat
commotio, ōnis f — a concussion or a violent shaking of a structure
congelatio, ōnis f — congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition caused by freezing
ectopia, ae f — ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or part
erosio, ōnis f — erosion, any superficial destructive process
extractio, ōnis f — extraction, the act or process of drawing out a part of body or foreign body
gingivālis, e — gingival
partialis, e — partial
planus, a, um — plane
phrenicus, a, um — phrenic
perforans, ntis — perforating
polypus, i m — a polyp, a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface
punctio, ōnis f — a puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it
ruptūra, ae f — rupture, the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of a bone or another structure
sectio, ōnis f — a section, the act of cutting
sectio cadavěris — a post-mortem examination of dead body
thermalis, e — thermal
transplantātum, i n — a transplant, a piece of tissue to transfer from one site to another
 verrūca, ae f — a wart

English-Latin vocabulary
amputation, the surgical removal of a limb or a portion of a limb or of any other appendage — amputatio, ōnis f
aortic — aorticus, a, um
breast — mamma, ae f
burn — combustio, ōnis f
calculus (plur. calculi), a solid pathological concretion — calculūs, i m
chemical — chemicus, a, um
closed — clausus, a, um
concussion, a violent shaking of a structure — commotio, ōnis f
erythema, redness of the skin due to hyperaemia — erythēma, ātis n
fracture, a break in the continuity of a bone — fractūra, ae f
functional — functionālis, e
ingury — laesio, ōnis f
open — apertus, a, um
operation — operatio, ōnis f
ophthalmoplegia, palsy (paralysis) of the ocular muscles — ophthalmoplegia, ae f
partial — partiālis, e
puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it — punctio, ōnis f
resection, surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e. g. jaw, stomach, colon etc. — resectio, ōnis f
splenic — splenīcus, a, um

§ 166 Model (Sample) of the Final Test in Clinical Terminology

1. Give Greek initial roots and Latin equivalents (in the dictionary form) with the following meaning:
   1) ear; 2) child; 3) head; 4) voice; 5) quick; 6) short; 7) many; 8) lacrimal sac
2. Compose one-word terms with the dictionary form with the following meaning:
   1) specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution; 2) results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood; 3) any kind of pain affecting a joint; 4) any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair; 5) the origin and development of bone marrow; 6) a person with an unusually small size of head; 7) acute inflammation of the gray mater of the brain; 8) calculus on the teeth
3. Write down the Latin dictionary form and give the full definition of the following terms in English:
   1) iatrogenic; 2) psychiatrist; 3) apnea; 4) phlebography; 5) erythema; 6) megaduodenum; 7) galactostasis; 8) typhlocele
4. Give the dictionary form of each word and the full definition of italicized words; translate into Latin the multiword terms:
   1) acquired immune deficiency syndrome; 2) secondary glaucoma; 3) replantation of the left hand; 4) partial ophthalmoplegy; 5) chemical burn of the oesophagus; 6) dropsy of the gall bladder; 7) monostotic fibrous dysplasia; 8) benign lymphocytic meningitis
**LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY**

**A**
- *abdōmen, ĭnis n* abdomen
- *abscessus, us m* an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration, abscess
- *achlorhydria, ae f* complete lack of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice, achlorhydria
- *acūtus, a, um* acute
- *adenalgia, ae f* a painful condition of a gland, adenalgia
- *adenasthenia, ae f* functional deficiency in a gland, adenaesthenia
- *adenocarcīnōma, ātis n* a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma
- *aērobion, i n* a microorganism which utilizes and assimilates atmospheric oxygen during growth, aerobe, aerobion
- *aetiologicus, a, um* aetiologic, based on the aetiology — the science of the investigation of the cause or origin
- *aliēnus, a, um* foreign
- *allergicus, a, um* allergic
- *alopecia, ae f* loss of hair, alopecia
- *amenorrhoea, ae f* the pathological absence or stoppage of the menstrual discharge from the uterus, amenorrhoea
- *amnesia, ae f* loss of memory of varying degree, amnesia
- *anaērobion, i n* a microorganism which is able to exist and multiply being deprived of either free oxygen or air, anaerobe
- *anaesthesiolōgus, i m* a specialist in the administration of anaesthetics, anaesthesiologist
- *angiopathia, ae f* any disease of blood vessels, angiopathy
- *anthropogēnus, a, um* caused by human activities
- *anthropologia, ae f* anthropology, science studying the man in the process of his evolution
- *anthropolōgus, i m* anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution
- *apodia, ae f* congenital absence of feet, apodia
- *arteria, ae f* artery
- *arthromalacia, ae f* softening of the joints, arthromalacia
- *asthenia, ae f* loss of vital forces, asthenia
- *autohaemotherapia, ae f* a method of treatment in which the patient’s own blood is administered to him, autohaemotherapy
- *autopepsia, ae f* the process of spontaneous disintegration of cells and tissues resulting from the action of intracellular enzymes, autopepsia
- *avulsio, ōnis f* the forcible removing a portion from a hollow structure, avulsion

**B**
- *bacteriālis, e* bacterial, originating or derived from, belonging to or consisting of bacteria
- *benignus, a, um* benign
biologia, ae f biology, science studying forms of life and living organisms
blepharītis, itīdis f inflammation of the eyelids, blepharitis
blepharoplastīca, ae f a plastic operation to restore an eyelid
brachycephālus, i m an individual with disproportionately short head, brachycephalic
brachydactylia, ae f a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactyly
bradyphagia, ae f slowing of swallowing, bradyphagia
bradypnoē, ĕs f an abnormally slow rate of breathing, bradypnoea
broncholithiāsis, is f the condition in which calculi occur in the lumen of bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis
C
cadāver, ĕris n a corps; a lifeless human body
calcŭlus, i m a solid pathological concretion, usually of inorganic matter, formed in any part of the body, calculus
carcinōma, ātis n a malignant epithelial tumor, carcinoma
carcinomatōsis, is f the condition in which carcinoma is widely distributed throughout the body, carcinomatosis
cardiogēnus, a, um cardiogenic, arising because of the heart
cardiolŏgus, i m a specialist treating heart diseases, cardiologist
cerēbrum, i n cerebrum
cervix, īcis f cervix
chondropathia, ae f any disease affecting a cartilage, chondropathy
chronīcus, a, um chronic, long continued
chylothōrax, ācis m the condition in which there is an effusion of the lymph into the thoracic cavity, chylothorax
colpotomia, ae f any cutting operation on the vagina, colpotomy
combustio, ŏnis f burn, an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat
commutio, ŏnis f a concussion or a violent shaking of a structure
congelatio, ŏnis f congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition caused by freezing
congenītus, a, um congenital
continuus, a, um continued
cor, cordis n heart
cornea, ae f cornea
corpus, āris n body
craniometria, ae f measurement of the skull, craniometry
cryochirurgia, ae f surgical procedures in which tissue is destroyed by freezing, cryosurgery
cryotherapia, ae f the science of the use of cold as a therapeutic measure, cryotherapy
cryptophthalmia, ae f congenital adhesion of the eyelids so that the eyeballs can not be seen, cryptophthalmia
cystorrhagia, ae f haemorrhage from the urinary bladder, cystorrhagia
cystoschisis, is f a congenital fissure of urinary bladder, cystoschisis
D

dacryostenōsis, is f narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis
dactylospasmus, ae f spasmotic contraction of a finger or toe, dactylospasm
decapsulatio, ōnis f surgical removal of a capsule or sheath, decapsulation
deformans, ntis deforming
dermatomycōsis, is f a generic term for all cutaneous infections due to fungi
dermatōsis, is f any disease of the skin, dermatosis
descensus, us m the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part, descent
desmorrhexis, is f rupture of a ligament, desmorrhexis
desmurgia, ae f the science of applying ligatures or bandages to a part, desmurgy
dexter, tra, trum right
diabētes, ae m anyone of a group of diseases in which there is polyuria and a disturbed metabolism, diabetes
diabeticus, a, um diabetic, suffering from or relating to diabetes
diagnōsis, is f medical denotation of the disease from which a person suffers, diagnosis
digiţus, i m finger, toe
disarticulatio, ōnis f separation or amputation in a joint, without cutting through bone, disarticulation
dolichocephalia, ae f the state of having a relatively long skull, dolichocephalia
duodēnum, i n duodenum
dysgeusia, ae f impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia
dysthyreōsis, is f imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland, dysthyreosis

E

ectopia, ae f a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or part, ectopia
embryologia, ae f the branch of biological science which is concerned with the origin and development of the embryo from the ovum to the stage of extrauterine life, embryology
embryotomia, ae f dissection of an embryo or fetus, embryotomy
empyēma, ātis n a collection of pus in a cavity, empyema
encephalogramma, ātis n any X-ray film obtained in the radiological examination of the ventricles and subarachnoid space of the brain, encephalogram
enterocolītis, itĭdis f an inflammed condition of the small intestine and the colon, enterocolitis
erosio, ōnis f any superficial destructive process, erosion
erythropenia, ae f a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia
evisceratio, ōnis f removal of the contents of an organ or part, evisceration
extractio, ōnis f the act or process of drawing out a part of body or foreign body, extraction
F
faciālis, e facial
facies, ēī f face
febris, is f fever
fetor, ōris m a foul odour or stench, fetor

G
galactorrhoea, ae f an excessive flow of milk, galactorrhoea
gaster, tris f stomach
gastrocēle, es f hernia of the stomach or of a portion which has become pouchled, gastrocele
gastrorrhoea, ae f the secretion by the stomach of an abnormally large quantity of gastric juice or of mucus, gastrorrhoea
gastrospasmus, i m an involuntary contraction of the stomach muscle, gastrospasm
gastrostŏma, ātis n natural or artificial gastric fistula, gastrostoma
geriāter, tri m a specialist treating diseases of the aged, geriatrician
glandŭla, ae f gland
gingivālis, e gingival
glossoplegia, ae f paralysis of the tongue, glossoplegia
glycaemia, ae f a condition in which the circulating blood contains a quantity of sugar above normal amounts, glycaemia
granulōma, ātis n a tumour composed of granulation tissue, granuloma
gravida, ae f a woman who is pregnant, gravida
gynaecolŏgus, i m a specialist for treatment genital diseases in women, gynecologist

H
haemarthrōsis, sis f extravasation of blood into a joint, haemarthrosis
haematologia, ae f branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases, hematology
halitōsis, is f fetid or offensive breath, halitosis
hemianopsia, ae f (=hemianopia, ae f) loss of half the vision in each eye, hemianopsia (hemianopia)
hemicrania, ae f a periodic morbid condition with localized headaches, hemicrania
hemiplegia, ae f paralysis of one half of the body, hemiplegia
hepar, ātis n liver
herpes, ētis m inflammation of the skin or mucous membrane, with clusters of deep-seated vesicles, herpes
hidradenītis, itĭdis f inflammation of the sweat glands, hidradenitis
histolўsis, is f spontaneous dissolution of living organic tissue, histolysis
hydromētra, ae f an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus, hydrometra
hyperaemia, ae f an excess of blood in any part of the body, hyperaemia
hyperkeratōsis, is f hypertrophy of the stratum corneum of the skin, hyperkeratosis
hyperthermia, ae f very high body temperature, hyperthermia
hypochylia, ae f a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened, hypochylia
hyposalivatio, ōnis f a condition in which there is abnormal decrease
in the secretion of saliva, hyposalivation
hypotonia, ae f lessen tension in any body structure, hypotonia

I
iatrogênus, a, um happening because of the physician’s manner or injudicious remarks, iatrogenic
implantatio, ōnis f the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body, implantation
implantātum, i n implant, any piece of tissue for use as a graft
indigestio, ōnis f any disturbance of the normal process of digestion, indigestion
infarctus, us m a wedge-shaped area of dead tissue, with or without haemorrhage, produced by the obstruction of an end artery, infarct, infarction
infectio, ōnis f the invasion of a pathogenic organism into the body and its subsequent multiplication, infection
inflammatio, ōnis f inflammation
insufficientia, ae f the state of being inadequate to perform normal function, insufficiency
intestīnum, i n intestine
inversus, a, um inverse
iris, ĭdis f iris

K
keratotomia, ae f making an incision into the cornea, keratotomy
laparogastrotomia, ae f the operation to create an artificial opening in the stomach, laparogastrostomy
laparoscopia, ae f the act or process of examining the peritoneal cavity and its contents by means of a laparoscope, laparoscope
larynx, yngis m larynx
latens, ntis hidden
leucocytōsis, is f an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood, leucocytōsis
ligamentum, i n ligament
lipuria, ae f the presence of an oily emulsion or fat in the urine, lipuria
lumbālis, e lumbal
lymphangiōma, ātis n a tumor formed of lymphatic tissue, lymphangioma
lymphostāsis, is f cessation of the flow of lymph, lymphostasis

M
maculōsus, a, um maculate, marked by maculae
mastogramma, ātis n result of breast X-ray examination, mastogram
megacōlo, i n a condition in which there is great dilatation of the large intestine, megacolon
melanoderma, ātis n a condition in which there is an unusually large accumulation of melanin in the skin, melanoderma
melanōsis, is f an abnormal deposition of the black pigment (melanin) in the skin or other tissues, melanosis
mellītus, a, um (diabētes) mellitus (diabetes) characterized by a high-fasting blood sugar
menalgia, ae f painful menstruation, menalgia
meningiōma, ōtis n a meningeal tumor, thought to arise from the arachnoidal villi, meningioma
mesenterīcus, a, um mesenteric
metamorphōsis, is f change of form or structure, metamorphosis
microgenia, ae f a condition in which the chin is of unusually small size, microgenia
micromyelia, ae f general reduction in size of the spinal cord, micromyelia
micronychia, ae f small nail or nails, micronychia
monodactylismus, i m a congenital condition in which one finger or toe only is present on the hand or the foot, monodactylism
morbus, i m disease
myasthenia, ae f weakness of muscles from whatever cause, myasthenia
myelītis, itīdis f inflammation of bone marrow, myelitis
myocēle, es f hernia of a muscle, myocèle
myoplegia, ae f paralysis of muscle or a condition in which is decreased muscular force, myoplegia

N
necropneumonia, ae f gangrene of the lung, necropneumonia
neonātus, a, um s newly born child
neoplasma, ātis n any new and morbid formation of tissue, neoplasm
nephrolithiāsis, is f a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis
nervus, i m nerve
neuralgia, ae f a painful affection of the nerves, due to functional disturbances or to neuritis, neuralgia
neurītis, itīdis f inflammation of a nerve, neuritis
neuropatholŏgus, i m a specialist treating diseases of nervous system, neuropathologist

O
occipitālis, e occipital
ocŭlus, i m eye
odontolĭthus, i m calculus on the teeth, odontolith
odontogenĕsis, is f the origin and formative development of teeth, odontogenesis
oligocytaemia, ae f a condition in the blood in which there is cell deficiency, oligocytaemia
oligophrenia, ae f congenital lack of the mentality, oligophrenia
oncolŏgus, i m a specialist treating tumors, oncologist
onychomycōsis, is f infection of nails caused by a fungus, onychomycosis
ophthalmoscopia, ae f instrumental-visual examination of the eye, ophthalmoscopy
os, oris n mouth
osteītis, itīdis f inflammation of bone due to infection or injury, osteitis
osteōma, ātis n an innocent tumor of bone, osteoma
osteomalacia, ae f softening of the bones, osteomalacia
osteonecrosis, is f death of bony tissue, osteonecrosis
osteopathia, ae f disease of bones, osteopathia
osteoporosis, is f rarefaction of bone, osteoporosis
otorhinolaryngologia, ae f branch of medicine for treating diseases of ear, nose and larynx, otorhinolaryngology

P
pachydektýlia, ae f abnormal thickening of a finger or toe, pachydektýly
palatoplegia, ae f paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia
palpatio, ōnis f the method of physical examination in which the hands are applied to the surface of the body, so that by sense of touch information is obtained about the condition of inner organs, palpation
pantalgia, ae f pain affecting all parts of the body, pantalgia
partialis, e partīāl
percussio, ōnis f the art of striking the thoracic or abdominal wall in order to produce sound vibration from which the nature of the underlying structures can be assessed, percussion
perforans, ntis perforating
pes, pedis m leg
phlebocarcinōma, ātis n a malignant epithelial tumour affecting a vein, phlebocarcinōma
photophobia, ae f abnormal intolerance to light, photophobia
phrenicus, a, um phrenic
phthisiāter, tri m a specialist treating tuberculosis, phthisiotherapist
physiologia, ae f science studying normal vital processes in human body, physiology
phytōtherapia, ae f method of treatment by means of medical plants, phytotherapy
planus, a, um plane
pneumocentēsis, is f lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of a cavity, pneumocentesis
pneumoëmpyēma, ātis n the presence of pus and gas within the pleural space, pneumoëmpyēma
poliomyelītis, itĭdis f an acute inflammation of anterior horn cells of the spinal cord due to polioviruses, poliomyelitis
polymastia, ae f the state in which in human beings there are more than two distinct mammary glands, polymastia
polypus, i m a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface, polyp
polyuria, ae f increase in the amount of the excreted urine, polyuria
proctologus, i m a specialist treating diseases of rectum, proctologist
prognathia, ae f a condition in which there is abnormal projection of one or both jaws, prognatism
prolapse, us m the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part, prolapse
prophylaxis, is f the art of preventing disease, prophylaxis
pseudoarthrōsis, is f a false joint formed between the fragments of
a fractured bone which have failed
to unite, pseudarthrosis
psychiatria, ae f branch of medicine
 treating mental diseases,
psychiatry
psychōsis, is f any kind of mental
disorder, psychosis
puerperalis, e puerperal
punctio, ōnis f the operation of
piercing a viscus or a swelling
either to establish the nature of its
content or to empty it, puncture
pyelītis, itĭdis f inflammation of
the pelvis of the kidney, pyelitis
pyogēnus, a, um forming or
producing pus, pyogenic
pyopneumoθōrax, ācis m
an inflammatory condition
characterized by the presence of
purulent fluid and gas in a pleural
cavity, pyopneumothorax
pyosalpinx, ngis f inflammation
of the uterine tube which has
progressed to pus formation,
pyosalpinx
S
salpingectomia, ae f excision of
a uterine tube, salpingectomy
salpingolŷsis, is f breaking-down
of adhesions in a uterine tube,
salpingolysis
sarcōma, ātis n a malignant tumor
of connective tissue or its
derivatives, sarcoma
sclerōma, ātis n an area of indurated
tissue, particularly in the mucous
membrane of the nose or larynx,
scleroma
sectio, ōnis f the act of cutting,
section
sectio cadavĕris a post-mortem
examination of dead body
senīlis, e senile
simplex, ĭcis simple
situs, us m position, site
sive or
somatologia, ae f branch of
anthropology, studying structure
of human body, somatology
spasmophilía, ae f a morbid state
in which there is a tendency
to convulsions and spasm,
spasmophilia
spasmus, i m a sudden, powerful,
involuntary contraction of muscle,
spasm
sphygmogramma, ātis n a record
of the arterial pulse waves,
sphygmogram
splanchnosclerōsis, is f hardening
of any viscus, splanchnosclerosis
splenomegalia, ae f enlargement
of the spleen, splenomegalias
spondylītis, itĭdis f inflammation
of the spine, spondilitis

R
rectum, i n rectum
renālis, e renal
replantatio, ōnis f the plantation
of a removed part of the whole
again, replantation
resectio, ōnis f surgical removal
of a part, usually of some
magnitude, e. g. jaw, stomach,
colon etc., resection
rhinogramma, ātis n X-ray film
of the nose, rhinogram
ruptūra, ae f the breaking or
forcible disruption of continuity
of the bone or other structure,
rupture

213
spondylodēsis, is f the operation of fusion of the spine, usually by a bone graft, spondylodesis
spongīōsus, a, um spongy (spongious), full of small holes, like a sponge
stenothōrax, ācis m a short, narrow thorax or chest, stenothorax
stomatomykōsis, is f any morbid condition of the oral cavity caused by a microscopical fungus, stomatomycosis
stomatoscopia, ae f visual-instrumental examination of the oral cavity, stomatoscopy
syndrŏmum, i n a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease, syndrome

T
tachycardia, ae f rapid action of the heart, tachycardia
tenorrhaphia, ae f an operation for the suturing of the divided ends of a tendon, tenorrhaphy
tenotomia, ae f the cutting of a tendon, tenotomy
thermālis, e thermal
thermotherapia, ae f the use of heat in the treatment of disease, thermotherapia
thoracoentēsis, is f a puncture of the wall of the thorax with the aim of any diagnostic, thoracocentesis
thrombocytopoēsis, is f the formation of blood platelets, thrombocytopoiesis
thrombotīcus, a, um characterized or caused by thrombosis, thrombotic
thyroideus, a, um thyroid
thyr(e)otoxicōsis, is f any toxic condition attributable to hyperactivity of the thyroid gland, thyrotoxicosis
toponeurōsis, is f localized neurosis, a functional derangement in any part of the body, toponeurosis
toxicomania, ae f an insane desire for poison, toxicomania
toxicōsis, is f the pathological condition caused by the adsorption of poison, toxicosis
transplantātum, i n a piece of tissue to transfer from one site to another, transplant
traumaticus, a, um traumatic
typhlectasia, ae f dilatation of the caecum, typhlectasia

U
ulcus, ĕris n ulcer
unguis, is m nail
uraemia, ae f the condition which is associated with the retention of metabolic products in the blood and disturbance of acid-base ratio of the latter, uraemia
uranoschĭsis, is f cleft palate, a congenital fissure in the midline of the hard palate, uranoschisis
utērus, i m uterus

V
venōsus, a, um venous
 verrūca, ae f wart
verus, a, um true
viscus, ĕris n the internal organs of the body which are closely related to the great serous cavities: pleural, pericardial or peritoneal
vitium, i n a defect or a vice, vitium
X

xanthopsia, ae f a disturbance of color vision, when everything appears yellow, xanthopsia

xanthōsis, is f yellowish discolouration, especially of the skin, xanthosis

xerophthalmia, ae f a morbid condition of eyes characterized by a shrunken appearance of the conjunctiva, xerophthalmia (=xeroma)
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A
an abnormally long colon of normal diameter, dolichocolon
dolichocōlon, i n
abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnoea tachypoē, ēs f
abnormal narrowing of the mouth, stenostomy stenostomia, ae f
abnormal narrowing of the internal diameter of a vessel, angiostenosis angiostenōsis, is f
abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia tachyphagia, ae f
abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion, hypopepsia hypopepsia, ae f
abnormal sluggishness of physical movement, bradykinesia bradykinesia, ae f
abnormal thickening of a finger or toe, pachydactyly pachydactylya, ae f
an accumulation of pus in the pericardium, pyopericardium pyopericardium, i n
achyilia, absence of acid and pepsin from the gastric juice achylia, ae f
acquired acquisītus, a, um
the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body, extraction extractio, ōnis f
acute acūtus, a, um
acute inflammation of the gray matter of the brain, polioencephalitis polioencephalītis, itīdis f
adenoma of the eyelid, blepharoadenoma blepharoadenōma, ātis n
adiponecrosis, necrosis affecting the fatty tissue of the body adiponecrosis, is f
aerobe, a microorganism which utilizes and assimilates atmospheric oxygen aērobion, i n
aerobic, requiring gaseous oxygen in order to live aērobicus, a, um
aglossia, the congenital condition of being without a tongue aglossia, ae f
alimentary alimentarius, a, um
allergic allergicus, a, um
amputation, the surgical removal of a limb or a portion of a limb or of any other appendage amputatio, ōnis f
anaemia, changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood anaemia, ae f
anaerobe, a microorganism which is able to exist although deprived of free oxygen or air anaērobion, i n
anaerobic, able to sustain life without free oxygen anaērobicus, a, um
angiology, the science of the blood vessels angiologia, ae f
angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or of lymphatic vessels angiōma, ātis, n
anthropologist, a specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution anthropŏlus, i m
aortic aorticus, a, um
apn(o)ea, the cessation in breathing
apnoë, ēs f
arthrocentesis, the surgical
procedure of puncturing a joint
arthrocentēsis, is f
arthralgia, any kind of pain affecting
a joint arthralgia, ae f
atriche, not having hair atrichia, ae f
atrophy, a condition of general
malnutrition from whatever cause
atrophia, ae f
atypical atypicus, a, um
autolaryngoscopy, the examination
of one’s own larynx with
a laryngoscope autolaryngoscopia,
ae f
autoplasty, the repair of a diseased
or injured tissue or organ by
material taken from another part
of the body autoplastīca, ae f
autopsy, post-mortem examination
of a body in order to establish
the cause of death autopsia, ae f

C

calculosis, the condition
in which a number of calculi
are present in any part
of the body calculōsis, is f
calculus (plur. calculi),
a solid pathological
concretion calculūs, i m
calculus on the teeth, odontolith
odontolithus, i m
cancerogenic (=carcinogenic),
producing carcinoma
cancerogēnus, a, um
carcinoma, a malignant
epithelial tumor carcinōma,
ātis n
a carcinoma the fragment of
which contains cartilaginous
elements, chondroma
chondrōma, ātis n
a carcinomatous tumor of
glandular epithelium and
connective tissue,
adeno carcinoma
adenocarcinōma, ātis n
cardinal cardinālis, e
cardiogram 1) result of X-ray
examination of the heart;
2) graphical picture of heart
work cardiogramma, ātis n
cardiology 1) X-ray examination of the heart; 2) graphical recording of heart activity
cardiographia, ae f
causing the growth of tumors, oncogenous oncogēnus, a, um
cerebral cerebrālis, e
cerebrospinal cerebrospinālis, e
changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood anaemia, ae f
chemical chemĭcus, a, um
cholecystolithiasis, the condition in which there are gallstones in the gall bladder or bile duct cholecystolithiāsis, is f
chondroporosis, a porous condition of cartilage shown in thinning of cartilage and formation of spaces and sinuses chondroporōsis, is f
chronic chronĭcus, a, um
a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales, psoriasis psoriāsis, is f
chyluria, the condition in which the urine contains lymph chyluria, ae f
closed clausus, a, um
collapse, a state of extreme weakness with physical and mental depression collapsus, us m
colonorrhagia, haemorrhage from the colon colonorrhagia, ae f
colpocystotomy, surgical incision into the urinary bladder through the wall of the vagina colpocystotomia, ae f
colpohysteropexy, the operative fixation of the uterus through the vagina colpohysteropexia, ae f
colpomyomectomy, removal of a myoma from the uterus by the vaginal route colpomyomectomia, ae f
coma, the state of complete loss of consciousness from which the patient cannot be roused by any ordinary external stimulus coma, ātis n
composite compositus, a, um
a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure commotio, ōnis f
a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis nephrolithiāsis, is f
a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking, aphagia aphagia
a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened, hypochylia hypochylia, ae f
a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia brachydactylia, ae f
a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalia hepatomegalia, ae f
congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition caused by freezing congelatio, ōnis f
congenital cleft of a vertebral arch or several arches, spondyloschisis spondyloschisis, is f
congenital fissure of the urinary bladder, cystoschisis cystoschisis, is f
cryosurgery, surgical procedures in which tissue is destroyed by freezing cryochirurgia, ae f
cryptolith, a calculus contained in a crypt cryptolithus, i m
cryptopsoriasis, hidden, latent psoriasis cryptopsoriasis, is f
cystitis, inflammation of the urinary bladder cystitis, itidis f
cytology, the science of the form and functions of cells cytologia, ae f

d dacryorrhoea, an excessive flow of tears dacryorrhoea, ae f
deficiency deficientia, ae f
dermatitis, inflammation of the skin dermatitis, itidis f
desmalgia, pain in a ligament desmalgia, ae f
desmotomy, incision of the ligament desmotomia, ae f
diagnosis via examination of iris, iridodiagnostics iridodiagnostica, ae f
didactylism, the congenital condition of having only two fingers on a hand or two toes on a foot didactylismus, i m
diffuse diffusus, a, um
dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia gastrectasia, ae f
direct directus, a, um
a discharge of pus, pyorrhoea pyorrhoea, ae f
any disease affecting a joint, arthropathy arthropathia, ae f

any diseased condition of the viscera, splanchnopathy splanchnopathia, ae f
any disease of skin, dermatosis dermatosis, is f
a disturbance of color vision when everything appears yellow, xanthopsia xanthopsia, ae f
dislocation, abnormal displacement of one bone upon another in a joint dislocatio, onis f
dolichocolon, an abnormally long colon of normal diameter dolichocolon, i n
dropsy, the abnormal accumulation of fluid in tissue or cavity space hydrops, opis m
dysmenorrhoea, pain occurring in the back and lower abdomen at or about the time of the menses dysmenorrhoea, ae f
dysplasia, abnormal development of tissue dysplasia, ae f
dystonia, a state of disordered tonicity dystonia, ae f
dystrophy, a disorder of the structure and functions of an organ or tissue due to perverted nutrition dystrophia, ae f

E ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or part ectopia, ae f
eczema, a non-contagious
inflammatory disease of the skin
with much itching and burning
cezēma, ātis n
embolaemia, a condition in which
emboli are present in the blood
embolaemia, ae f
embryectomy, the surgical removal
of the embryo embryectomia, ae f
embryopathology, the branch
of pathology concerned with
defective or abnormal
development of embryo
embryopathologia, ae f
emphysema, a condition in which
the alveoli of the lungs are dilated
emphysēma, ātis n
encephalomalacia, softening of
the brain encephalomalacia, ae f
encephalopathy, any morbid
condition of the brain
encephalopathia, ae f
endogenous, having origin within
the organism endogēnus, a, um
endometritis, an inflammation of
the inner mucous membrane of
the uterus endometritis, itiēdis f
enophthalmus, recession of
the eyeball into the cavity
of the orbit enophthalmus, i m
enteritis, inflammation of
the mucous membrane of
the intestine enteritis, itiēdis f
enterogastritis, inflammation of
the small intestine and the
stomach enterogastritis, itiēdis f
enterolithiasis, the formation
of calculi or concretions in
the intestine enterolithiāsis, is f
enteromegalia, an unusually large
size of the intestine enteromegalia,
ae f

the entrance and establishment
of parasites into the body of
a host, invasion invasio, ōnis f
erythema, redness of the skin
due to hyperaemia erythēma,
ātis n
evisceration, a removal of
the contents of an organ
or part evisceratio, ōnis f
an excessive flow of milk,
galactorroea galactorroea, ae f
excessive sensitiveness of any
organ or part of the body,
hyperaesthesia hyperaesthesia,
ae f
exogenous, belonging to
aetiological factors outside
the organism exogēnus, a, um
eye ocŭlus, i m

F
fetal fetālis, e
femur femur, ōris n
fever febris, is f
fibroma, an innocent tumor
composed chiefly
of connective tissue fibrōma,
ātis n
fibrous fibrōsus, a, um
any fluid that has passed
through the membrane of
the skin, transudate
transsudātum, i n
the formation of concretions,
lithiāsis lithiāsis, is f
fracture, a break in
the continuity of a bone
fractūra, ae f
functional functionālis, e
G
galactostasis, arrest or stagnation in the secretion of milk galactostásis, is f
gall bladder vesīca fellea (biliāris) geminātus, a, um
gerontology, science studying living processes in the aged gerontologia, ae f
gigantism, a condition of excessive tallness gigantismus, i m
glaucoma, a condition of increased intraocular pressure and its consequences glaučōma, ātis n
glossitis, inflammation of the tongue glossītis, itĭdis f
gnathalgia, pain in one or both jaws gnathalgia, ae f
gnathoschisis, a congenital fissure in the maxilla gnathoschĭsis, is f
goitre, an enlargement of the thyroid gland struma, ae f

and transmitted by females
haemophilia, ae f
hand manus, us f
hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis osteosclerōsis, is f
headache dolor (ōris m) capĭtis
hemiatrophy, atrophy only affecting one half of the body, or one half of an organ hemiatrophia, ae f
hepatic hepaticus, a, um
hepatitis, inflammation of the liver hepātītis, itĭdis f
hepatomegalia, a condition of enlargement of the liver hepatomegalia, ae f
hereditary hereditarius, a, um
herniation of the uterus, metrocēle metrocēle, es f
hidrosis 1) the process of secreting sweat; 2) abnormally profuse sweating hidrōsis, is f
hydrarthrosis, a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint hydrarthrōsis, is f
hydrometra, an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus hydromētra, ae f
hyperaesthesia, excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body hyperaesthesia, ae f
hyperglycaemia, an excessive amount of sugar in the blood hyperglycaemia, ae f
hypersalivation, excessive secretion of saliva hypersalivatio, ōnis f
hypertension, high arterial blood pressure hypertensio, ōnis f

H
haematology, branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases haematologia, ae f
haematoma, a tumor or swelling composed of blood haematōma, ātis n
haematomyelia, bleeding within the substance of the spinal cord haematomyelia, ae f
haematosalpinx, collection and retention of blood in a uterine tube haematosalpinx, ngis f
haemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood haemogramma, ātis n
haemophilia, a severe hereditary bleeding disease affecting males
hypogalactia, the secretion of too small quantity of milk
hypogalactia, ae f

hypoglycaemic, relating or belonging to, or bringing about hypoglycaemia, a low blood sugar concentration hypoglycaemicus, a, um

hypomnesia, a weak or defective state of the memory hypomnesia, ae f

hypoplasia, underdevelopment of a tissue or part hypoplasia, ae f

hypothermia, deficiency of body heat hypothermia, ae f

I

iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks, iatrogénus, a, um

immune immūnus, a, um

immunodeficiency immunodeficientia, ae f

impairment of the voice, dysphonia dysphonia, ae f

implant, any piece of tissue used as a graft implantātum, i n

implantation, the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body implantatio, ōnis f

incision of the abdominal wall and excision of the uterus, laparohysteroectomy laparohysteroectomia, ae f

an increase in the total number of leucocytes, leucocytosis leucocytōsis, is f

infective infectīvus, a, um

inflammation inflammation, ōnis f

~ of the cornea, keratitis keratitis, itīdis f

~ affecting the kidney and the urinary bladder, pyelocystitis pyelocystītis, itīdis f

~ in the nail fold, panaris panaritium, i n

~ of the abdominal muscles, laparomyositis laparomyositis, itīdis f

~ of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis endometrītis, itīdis f

~ of the liver, hepatitis hepatītis, itīdis f

~ of the membranes of the brain or spinal cord, meningitis meningitis, itīdis f

injury laesio, ōnis f

intermittent, coming and going at intervals intermittens, ntis

internal internus, a, um

intravenous intravenōsus, a, um

iridodiagnóstics, diagnosis via examination of iris iridodiagnosticā, ae f

J

joint articulatio, ōnis f

K

keratomycosis, disease of cornea caused by a fungus keratomycōsis, is f

keratoplasty, plastic surgery of the cornea keratoplastica, ae f

any kind of pain affecting a joint, arthralgia arthralgia, ae f
L
left sinister, tra, trum
lung pulmo, ōnis m
lymphangiitis, inflammation of lymphatic vessels lymphangiitis, ītīdis f
lymphocytic lymphocyticus, a, um
lymphocytosis, an increase in the number of lymphocytes lymphocytōsis, is f

M
macrococyte, a red blood cell that is larger than normal macrocȳtus, i m
macronychia, excessive length or size of the nails macronychia, ae f
mammogram (=mastogram) result of breast X-ray examination, mammogramma. ātis n
a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives, sarcoma sarcōma, ātis n
mastopathy, any diseased condition of the mammary gland mastopathia, ae f
measurement the size of pelvis in women, pelvimetry pelvimetria, ae f
a medical practitioner skilled in general surgery, who specializes in the operative treatment of diseases of the nervous system, neurosurgeon neurochirurgus, i m
megaloduodenum, duodenum of abnormally large size megaloduodēnum, i n
megalomania, a mental condition in which a person has grandiose delusions about himself and his own intellect, power, importance and so on megalomania, ae f
melanocarcinoma, a darkly pigmented malignant epithelial tumor melanocarcinōma, ātis n
a meningeal tumor thought to arise from the arachnoidal villi, meningioma meningiōma, ātis n
menalgia, painful menstruation menalgia, ae f
meningitis, inflammation of the membranes of the brain or spinal cord meningītis, ītīdis f
meningoencephalitis, an inflammatory condition of the brain and its meninges meningoencephalītis, itīdis f
metastasis, the transfer of disease from its primary site to distant parts of the body by blood vessels, lymphatics or direct contiguity metastāsis, is f
micromastia, abnormal smallness of the mammary glands micromastia, ae f
microsphygmy, diminished strength of pulse microsphygmia, ae f
monocytopoësis, the production of monocytes in the bone marrow monocytopoēsis, is f
monopathophobia, fear of a particular disease monopathophobia, ae f
monostotic, pertaining to a single bone monostotĭcus, a, um
any morbid condition affecting the lungs, pneumopathy pneumopathia, ae f
any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy rhinopathia, ae f
any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair, trichopathy trichopathia, ae f
myelocytaemia, the presence of myelocytes in the blood myelocytaemia, ae f
myopia, short sight myopia, ae f

N
narcosis, stupor produced by drugs and tending to insensibility and paralysis narcōsis, is f
narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis dacryostenōsis, is f
necraemia, a condition in which the blood loses its vitality necraemia, ae f
neoa rthrosis, an artificial joint implanted by the surgical operation neoarthrōsis, is f
a neoplasm originating in embryonic elements or blighted ovum, embryoneoplasm embryoneoplasma, ātis n
nephrogenic, produced by or originating in a kidney nephrogēnus, a um
nephropathy, disease of the kidney nephropathia, ae f
neurogenic, happening because of the nervous system neurogēnus, a, um

O
odontogenic, relating to the development of the teeth odontogēnus, a, um
odontome, a solid or cystic tumour occurring in the jaws which is derived from cells conserved in tooth development odontōma, ātis n
oedema, the presence of excessive amounts of fluid in the intercellular tissue spaces of the body oedēma, ātis n
oesphagostenosis, narrowing of the oesophagus oesphagostenōsis, is f
oesphagostoma, any opening into the oesophagus apart from the normal entrance and exit oesphagogōstoma, ātis n
oesphagus oesphāgus, i m
oligodactyla, a congenital deficiency of fingers, or toes oligodactyla, ae f
oncologist, a specialist treating tumorous diseases oncológus, i m
oncotherapy, the treatment of tumours oncotherapia, ae f
onychodystrophy, malformation of the nails due to impaired nutrition onychodystrophia, ae f
open apertus, a, um
operation operatio, ōnis f
the operation for the relief of hernia and the resultant reduction of the latter, herniotomia herniotomia, ae f
the operation of removal of the adenoid growth by excision, adenotomy adenotomia, ae f
the operation of transference of a tissue of an organ from one place to an other with the aim of improving or renewing a function,
transplantation transplantatio, ōnis f
ophthalmoplegy, palsy (paralysis) of the ocular muscles ophthalmoplegia, ae f
ophthalmorrhexis, rupture of the eyeball ophthalmorrhexis, is f
ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye ophthalmoscopy, ae f
the origin and development of bone marrow, myelogenesis myelogenēsis, is f
the origin and development of morbid condition, pathogenesis pathogenēsis, is f
the origin, formation and development of body tissue, histogenesis histogenēsis, is f
osteochondrosis, a degenerative change in bony and cartilage tissues osteochondrōsis, is f
osteodystrophy, a disorder of bone nutrition osteodystrophē, ae f
osteomalacia, softening of the bones osteomalacia, ae f
osteoporosis, rarefaction of bone osteoporōsis, is f
otogenic, happening because of the ear otogenēs, a, um
otolaryngologist, a specialist treating ear and larynx diseases otolaryngologist, i m

P
pachycheilia, abnormal thickness or swelling of the lips pachycheilia, ae f
panaris, inflammation in the nail fold panaritium, i n
paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia palatoplegia, ae f
paralysis, loss of motor strength due to a functional or organic disorder of neural or neuromuscular mechanismus paralysis, is f
paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia diplegia, ae f
paranephritis, an inflammatory condition involving the connective tissue adjacent to the kidney paranephritis, itīdis f
partial partīālis, e
a pathological condition in which one muscle, one group of muscle or one part of the body is only affected, monoplegia monoplegia, ae f
a pathological condition involving many joints, polyarthropathy polyarthropathia, ae f
pathological softening of cartilage, chondromalacia chondromalacia, ae f
pediatrician, a specialist treating children’s diseases paedīater, tri m
peduncle pedūnculus, i m
pelvic pelvīcus, a, um
pericystitis, inflammation in which the structures around the urinary bladder are affected pericystitis, itīdis f
a person with an unusually small size of head, microcephalus microcephalus, i m
pharmacophobia, morbid fear of taking drugs or medicines pharmacophobia, ae f
pharmacotherapia, science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacotherapy pharmacotherapia, ae f
phlebography 1) radiographic visualization of veins; 2) the tracing of the venous pulse by means of a phlebograph phlebographia, ae f
phoniatrics (=phoniatry), the treatment of disorders of speech phoniatrics, ae f
phonocardiogram, the record produced by an instrument for recording heart sounds phonocardiogramma, ōsis n
photophobia, abnormal intolerance to light photophobia, ae f
phthisiologist, a specialist treating tuberculosis phthisiāter, tri m
phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medical herbs phytotherapia, ae f
plasma, the fluid portion of the blood in which the blood corpuscles are suspended plasma, āsis n
any plastic operation for repair or reconstruction of the urinary bladder, cystoplasty cystoplastica, ae f
any plastic surgical operation on the vagina, colpoplasty colpoplastica, ae f
pneumocentesis, lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of the cavity pneumocentēsis, is f
pneumoempyema, the presence of pus and gas within the pleural space pneumoempyēma, āsis n
pneumohaemorrhōrax, an accumulation of gas, air and blood in the cavity of the thorax pneumohaemorrhōrax, āsis m
pneumonia, inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung pneumonia, ae f
pneumorrhaphy, the operation of suturing a wound of the lung pneumorrhaphia, ae f
pneumotomy, the making of an incision into the lung pneumotomia, ae f
podagra, gout, a disease of the purine metabolism characterized by attacks of arthritis with an associated raised serum uric acid podāgra, ae f
podalgia, sensation of pain in the foot podalgia, ae f
polioencephalopathy, any pathological condition of the gray matter of the brain polioencephalopathia, ae f
polyavitaminosis, a morbid condition caused by deficiency of several vitamins polyavitaminōsis, is f
polyposis, a condition in which the colon is studded with polypi growing from the mucous membrane polypōsis, is f
polypus of the vagina, colpopolypus colpopolūpus, i m
postoperative postoperatīvus, a, um
primary primarius, a, um
proctodiagnostics, examination of the functional state of
the rectum proctodiagnostīca, ae f
proctoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the rectum proctoscopīa, ae f
proctospasm, spasmatic contraction of the rectum proctospasmus, i m
profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose, rhinorrhoea rhinorrhoea, ae f
prolapse, the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part prolapsus, us m
psychiatrist, specialist treating mental diseases psychiāter, tri m
psychogenic, developing or originating of mental causes psychogēnus, a, um
psychologist, specialist studying mental activities of a human personality psycholŏgus, i m
puncture of the cornea, keratocentesis keratocentēsis, is f
puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it punctūra, ae f;
punctio, ōnis f
pyuria, a condition in which pus is present in the urine pyuria, ae f

resection, surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e.g. jaw, stomach, colon etc. resectio, ōnis f
results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood, hemogram haemogramma, ātis n
retention of the menstrual flow due to congenital or acquired genital canal stenosis, cryptomenorrhoea cryptomenorrhoea, ae f
retina retina, ae f
rhinolith, a concretion in the cavity of the nose rhinolithus, i m
rhinopathy, any morbid condition of the nose rhinopathia, ae f
rhinoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the nose rhinoscopīa, ae f
rib costa, ae f
right dexter, tra, trum

S
salpingogram, the radiograph made during the radiographic visualization of the uterus and uterine tubes salpingogramma, ātis n
salpingopexy, surgical fixation of the uterine tube salpingopexia, ae f
sarcomatosis, the condition in which a number of sarcomata develops here and there on the body sarcomatōsis, is f
science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacotherapy pharmacotherapia, ae f
scientist studying normal vital processes in human organism
physiológus, i m
sclerodermatitis, inflammation and induration of the skin
sclerodermatītis, itīdis f
secondary secundarius, a, um
senile senīlis, e
separation of a tissue as a result of its death, necrolysis
sclerodermatītis, itīdis f
sialolith, a salivary calculus
sialolīthus, i m
simple simplex, ĭcis
somatology, branch of anthropology
studying structure of human body
somatologia, ae f
spasm of the caecum, typhlospasm
typhlospasmus, i m
specialist studying forms of life and vital organisms, biologist
biolŏgus, i m
specialist studying the man in process of his evolution,
anthropologist anthropolŏgus, i m
medical specialist treating
~ blood diseases, hematologist
haematolŏgus, i m
~ children’s diseases, pediatrician
paediāter, tri m
~ ear and larynx diseases,
olaryngologist, otolaryngolŏgus, i m
~ inner organs, therapeutist
therapeutista, ae m
~ mental diseases, psychiatrist
psychiāter, tri m
~ tumorous diseases, oncologist
oncolŏgus, i m
~ tuberculosis, phthisiologist
phthiisiāter, tri m
splenic splenicus, a, um
splenohepatomegaly,
enlargement of the spleen
splenohepatomegalia ae f
spondylopathy, any disease of the vertebrae
spondylopathia, ae f
spongiform, having resemblance to a sponge
spongiformis, e
a state in which most of the teeth are lacking
oligodentia oligodentia, ae f
a state in which there are too few erythrocytes
erythropenia erythropenia, ae f
stenosis, narrowing or stricture of an orifice or of the lumen of a hollow or tubular organ
stenōsis, is f
stomach gaster, tris f
somatology, branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of the oral cavity
stomatologia, ae f
stomatītis, inflammation of the oral cavity
stomatītis, itīdis f
subacute, (disease) running a moderately rapid and severe course for which the word acute would not be appropriate
subacūtus, a, um
subcutaneous subcutaneus a, um
a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli
thromboembolismus, i m
superficial superficiālis, e
suppurative, pus-forming suppuratīvus, a, um
surgical operation on the small structures with the aid of
a microscope, microsurgery
microchirurgia, ae f

symblepharon, adhesion of the eyelid
to the eyeball symblephāron, i n

symptom, the consciousness of
a disturbance in a bodily function
symptōma, ātis n

syndrome, a distinct group of signs
which form a characteristic
clinical picture of the disease
syndrōmum, i n

synphalangism, a condition in which
the joints of certain fingers or toes
are fused synphalangismus, i m

tachyphagia, abnormal quickness
in eating, tachyphagia tachyphagia, 
ae f
tendon tendo, īnis m
tenodesis, operative fixation of
a tendon tenodēsis, is f

the presence of air or gas within
a thorax, pneumothorax
pneumothōrax, ācis m

the presence of blood in the tympanic
cavity, haemotympanum
haemotympānum, i n

the presence of blood in the urine,
haematuria haematuria, ae f

the production and evolution of
form, morphogenesis
morphogenēsis, is f

the production of urinary calculi and
the morbid state due to the
presence of calculi in the urinary
system, urolithiasis urolithiāsis, is f

the rash or eruption on the mucous
tissue, enanthema enanthēma, ātis n

the surgical establishment of
a permanent or semipermanent
opening into the urinary
bladder, cystostomy
cystostomia, se f

therapeutist, specialist for
treating diseases of inner
organs therapeutista, ae m

thoracometry, measurement
of the size of the thorax
thoracometria, ae f

thromboembolism, a sudden
blocking of a blood vessel,
usually an artery, by the
emboli thromboëmbolismus,
i m

tenolysis, the freeing of a tendon
from adhesions tenolysis, is f

thrombosis, intravascular
coagulation during life
producing a thrombus
thrombōsis, is f

tissue textus, us m
tomography, body-section
radiography tomographia, ae f
tonsillitis, inflammation of
the tonsil tonsillītis, itīdis f
tonsillotomy, the surgical
operation for removal of
a part of a tonsil tonsillotomia,
ae f

topography, the anatomical
description of any particular
part of the body topographia,
ae f

topophobia, unreasoning fear of
certain places topophobia, ae f

total or partial surgical removal
of diseased lung tissue,
pneumonectomy
pneumonectomia, ae f

toxicosis, the pathological
condition caused by
the absorption of poisons toxicōsis, is f
transfusion, the introduction of sterile fluids such as blood, plasma, serum and other solutions into the blood vessels of the circulatory system transfusio, ōnis f
transplantation, the operation of transference of a tissue or an organ from one place to an other with the aim of improving or renewing the function transplantation, ónis f
traumatic traumaticus, a, um
treatment by means of medical plants, phytotherapy phytoterapia, ae f
treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors, physiotherapy physiotherapia, ae f
tuberculosis tuberculōsis, is f
a tumor consisting of connective tissue element, desmoneoplasm desmoneoplasma, ātis n
typhlocele, a hernia involving the caecum typhlocēle, es f

U
ulceration, the process of formation of an ulcer ulceratio, ōnis f
ultrasonic, ultrasound ultrasonarius, a, um
urethritis, inflammation of the urethra urethrītis, itīdis f
use of cold or freezing as a therapeutic measure, cryotherapy cryotherapia, ae f

V
viral virālis, e

X
THE INTERNATIONAL STUDENTS’ ANTHEM “GAUDEAMUS”

**Gaudeāmus igĭtur,**  
Let us rejoice therefore

**Juvĕnes dum sumus!**  
While we are young!

**Post jucundam juventūtem,**  
After a pleasant youth,

**Post molestam senectūtem**  
After a trobling old age

**Nos habēbit humus. (bis)**  
The earth will have us.

**Ubi sunt qui ante nos**  
Where are they who before us

**In mundo fuēre?**  
Were in the world?

**Transeas ad supĕros,**  
You may go up to the gods,

**Transeas ad infĕros,**  
You may cross into the underworld,

**Hos si vis vidēre. (bis)**  
If you wish to see them.

**Vita nostra brevis est,**  
Our life is brief,

**Brevi finiētur:**  
It will shortly end:

**Venit mors velocĭter,**  
Death comes quickly,

**Rapit nos atrocĭter,**  
Snatches us cruelly,

**Nemĭni parcētur. (bis)**  
It spares no one.

**Vivat Academia!**  
Long live the academy!

**Vivant professōres!**  
Long live the teachers!

**Vivat membrum quodlĭbet,**  
Long live each student!

**Vivat membra quaelĭbet,**  
Long live all students!

**Semper sint in fl____ore! (bis)**  
May they always florish!

**Vivant omnes virgĭnes,**  
Long live all girls,

**Gracĭles, formōsae!**  
Slender and beautiful!

**Vivant et muliĕres,**  
Long live wives as well,

**Tenĕre, amabĭles,**  
Tender, loveable,

**Bonae, laboriōsae. (bis)**  
Good and productive.

**Vivat et Respublĭca**  
Long live the state as well

**Et qui illam regunt!**  
As they who rule it!

**Vivat nostra civĭtas,**  
Long live our city

**Maecenātum carĭtas,**  
[And] the charity of benefactors

**Qui nos hic protēgunt! (bis)**  
Who protect us here!

**Pereat tristitia,**  
Let sadness perish,

**Pereant dolōres!**  
Let sorrows perish!

**Pereat diabŏlus,**  
Let the devil perish,

**Quivis antiburschius**  
Let [perish] whoever who is anti-student

**Atque irrisōres! (bis)**  
As well those who mock us!

*The most popular stanzas nowadays are typed in black type*
## LATIN PROVERBS AND QUOTATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Latin Proverb</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Aes debitōrem leve, grave inimīcum facit</td>
<td>If you want to keep a friend, never borrow, never lend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Amīcus certus in re incerta cernĭtur</td>
<td>A friend in need is a friend indeed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Amor non est medicabilis herbis</td>
<td>No herb will cure love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Amor tussisque non celantur</td>
<td>Love and cough cannot be hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Aquīla muscas non captat</td>
<td>An eagle doesn’t catch the flies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Arte et humanitāte, labōre et scientia</td>
<td>By art and humanity, by labor and knowledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Audiātur et altĕra pars</td>
<td>Let’s hear the opposite side!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Aurōra Musis amīca</td>
<td>He that will thrive, must rise at five</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Bis dat qui cito dat</td>
<td>He gives twice who gives in a trice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Bona valetūdo melior est quam maximae divitiae</td>
<td>Good health is above wealth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Cogitatiōnes posteriōres saepe sunt meliōres</td>
<td>Second thoughts are the best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Cogĭto ergo sum</td>
<td>I think, therefore I am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Consuetūdo est altēra natūra</td>
<td>Custom is second nature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Copia non est inopia</td>
<td>Store is no sore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Cum promisēras, facias</td>
<td>Promise is a debt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>De gustībus non est disputandum</td>
<td>Tastes are not to be argued</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>De mortuis aut bene aut nihil</td>
<td>Speak nothing but good of the dead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>Diabŏlus non est tam ater, ac pingĭitur</td>
<td>The devil is not so black as he is painted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>Dictum — factum</td>
<td>Said and done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>Dies levat lucrum</td>
<td>Time heals most sorrows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>Divide et impēra</td>
<td>Divide and rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>Domus propria domus optĭma</td>
<td>My house is my castle. (East or west, home is best)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>Dum spiro spero</td>
<td>As long as I breathe, I hope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>Duos qui lepōres sequĭtur, neutrum capit</td>
<td>If you run after two hares, you will catch neither</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>Dura lex sed lex</td>
<td>The law is the law and must be obeyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.</td>
<td>Experientia est optĭma magistra (=Usus est optimus magister)</td>
<td>Experience is the best teacher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.</td>
<td>Ebriĕtas est voluntaria insania</td>
<td>Drunkenness is nothing but voluntary madness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28.</td>
<td>E cantu dignoscĭtur avis</td>
<td>A bird may be known by its song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29.</td>
<td>Equi donāti dentes non sunt inspiciendi</td>
<td>Don’t look a gift horse in the mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>Errāre humānum est</td>
<td>It’s human to err</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>Est avis in dextra melior quam quattuor extra</td>
<td>A bird in the hand is worth one hundred in flight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td>Facĭle dictu, difficĭle factu</td>
<td>Easier said than done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>Facta, non verba</td>
<td>Better to do well than to say well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>Festīna lente</td>
<td>Make haste slowly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
35. Finis corōnat opus
   All is well that ends well
36. Fronti nulla fides
   Appearances are deceitful
37. Fortes fūrūna adjūvat
   Fortune favours the brave
38. Homīnes amplius oculis credunt
   quam aurībus
   A picture is worth a thousand words
39. Homo a se ortus
   A self-made man
40. Homo doctus in se divitias habet
   The wealth of the mind is the only true wealth
41. Homo est anĭmal sociāle
   Man is by nature a political animal
42. Homo homīni lupus est
   Man is a wolf to man
43. Homo propōnit, sed Deus dispōnit
   Man proposes but God disposes
44. Homo sum, humāni nihil a me alienum
   esse puto
   I am a man, I count nothing human alien to me
45. Ignorantia non est argumentum
   Lack of knowledge is no excuse
   (=Ignorance is no argument)
46. In medio stat virtus
   Virtue stands in the middle
47. Ira furor brevis est
   Anger is short madness
48. Labor et patientia omnia vincunt
   Diligence is the mother of success
49. Mala herba cito crescit
   Great weeds grow apace
50. Manus manum lavat
   One hand washes the other
51. Mares verbōrum, gutta rerum
   Great boast, small roast
52. Medĭcus curat, natūra sanat
   The physician heals, nature convalesces
53. Mens sana in corpŏre sano
   A healthy mind in a healthy body
54. Nemo sine vitio est
   No one is without a fault
55. Ne diffĕras in crastīnum
   Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today
56. Ne noceas, si juvare non potes
   Do no harm, if you can not help
57. Nomen est omen
   The name is the sign
58. Ne Juppiter quidem omnĭbus
   placet
   He who pleased everybody died before he was born
59. Nihil volenti difficīle est
   Anything is possible if you wish hard enough
60. Non est fumus absque igne
   There is no smoke without fire
61. Non est via in medicīna sine lingua
   There is no way in medicine without Latin
62. Non scholae, sed vitae discīmus
   We learn not for school but for life
63. Nulla aetas ad discendum sera
   It is never too late to learn
64. Nulla regūla sine exceptione
   There is no rule without exception
65. Nulla dies sine linea
   Not a day without a line
66. Nullum malum sine aliquo bono
   No great loss without some small gain
67. Omnia fluunt, omnia mutantur
   Everything flows and everything changes
68. Omnia mea mecum porto
   All I have, I carry with me
69. O tempŏra, o mores!
   What times! What customs!
70. Otium post negotium
   Work done, have your fun
Agreements should be obeyed
Learn to creep before you leap
Through the thorns (hard-ships) to the stars!
Idleness is the mother of all evil
A filled stomach is deaf to learning
Better is late than never
First, do no harm
Well begun is half done
Out of sight, out of mind
Whom God wishes to ruin, he first deprives him of reason
What is done by night appears by day
Anything said in Latin sounds profound
He that is not with us is against us
He will find who is searching
He who writes reads twice
The ill you do will rebound upon you
Which was to be proved
What Jupiter is allowed to do cattle are not
So many men, so many minds
Whatever is good to know is difficult to learn
Repeating is the mother of learning
To dance after sambody’s tune
Knowledge is power
I know that I know nothing
There is nothing left for the late-comers
Without ill-will and without favor
No pains, no gains
To be loved, love!
Each man is the maker of his own fortune
By blood, toil, tears and sweat
There is a time and place for everything
To each his own
Live and learn
We can do as much as we know
Excesses destroy our powers
The times change and we are changing with them
108. Tempōris filia verĭtas
Truth is a daughter of time

109. Totus mundus agit histriōnem
All the world’s a stage

110. Ubi concordia ibi victoria
Where is the unity, there is the victory

111. Umbram suam timēre
He is afraid of his own shadow

112. Una hirundo non facit ver
One swallow makes no summer

113. Ut salūtas, ita salutabĕris
As the call, so the echo

114. Verba docent, exempla trahunt
Words are teaching, examples are pulling

115. Verum amīcum pecunia non parābis
Money cannot buy friendship

116. Vincuntur molli pectŏra dura prece
A word warmly said gives comfort even to a cat

117. Vox popŭli — vox Dei
The voice of the people is the God’s voice

MEDICAL PROFESSIONAL EXPRESSIONS

1. Abactus venter
Artificially induced abortion

2. Abalienatio mentis
Insanity; mental derangement

3. Ad aurem (ad aur.)
At the ear

4. Ad libĭtum (ad lib.)
At pleasure, freely

5. Ad usum externum (internum)
To be taken externally (internally); for external (internal) use

6. Alienatio partis
Gangrene

7. Alternis diēbus (alt. d.)
Every other day

8. Alternis horis (a. h.)
Every other hour

9. Ante meridiem (a. m.)
Morning, before noon

10. Ante mortem
Before death

11. Ante partum
Before childbirth

12. Ante prandium (a. p.)
Before dinner

13. Auris dextra (a. d.)
Right ear

14. Auris laevis (sinistra) (a. l., a. s.)
Left ear

15. Aures utraequeae
Both ears

16. Bipāra
A woman who has had born two children at separate births

17. Bis in die (b. i. d.)
Twice a day

18. Compos mentis
Of sound mind

19. Dolōres vagi
Wandering pains

20. Facies hippocratĭca
The appearance of a dying person described by Hippocrates: a pale or livid face with dull sunken eyes, pinched nose, hollow cheeks and temples, open mouth and dropped lower jaw

21. Habĭtus aegrŏti
The general physical appearance of a diseased person; habit
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Horrida cutis</td>
<td>Goose flesh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(=cutis anserina)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Impotentia coeundi</td>
<td>Sexual impotence in the male</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Impotentia erigendi</td>
<td>Sexual impotence due to lack of the power of erection of the penis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Impotentia generandi</td>
<td>Inability to reproduce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>In articulo mortis</td>
<td>At the instant of death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>In extrimis</td>
<td>At the point of death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>In situ</td>
<td>1. In the normal, natural or original position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. In a given place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Inter alia</td>
<td>Among the other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>In utero</td>
<td>Within the uterus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>In vacuo</td>
<td>In a vacuum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>In vitro</td>
<td>Within a glass vessel; applied to changes taking place in the test-tube method of investigation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>In vivo</td>
<td>Within the living organism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Intra vitam</td>
<td>During life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Locum tenens</td>
<td>A medical practitioner who acts as deputy for another</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Locus minoris</td>
<td>The place of least resistance (an organ or tissue most likely to be a particular disease)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Lusus naturae</td>
<td>A teratism or other freak of nature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Malum aegypticum</td>
<td>Diphtheria (literally — Egyptian evil)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Malum arteriarem senile</td>
<td>Senile arteriosclerosis (literally — senile evil of arteries)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Malum caducum</td>
<td>Epilepsy (literally — falling evil)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Malum venereum</td>
<td>Syphilis (literally — venereal evil)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Minimum audibile</td>
<td>The auditory threshold; the least sound that can be heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Minimum cognoscibile</td>
<td>The visibility threshold for recognizing shapes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Minimum sensibile</td>
<td>The threshold of consciousness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Muscae volitantes</td>
<td>The appearance in the fields of vision of variously shaped figures caused by defect of the vitreous humor (literally — flying flies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Noli - me - tangere</td>
<td>An old but colorful name for rodent ulcer (literally — do not touch me)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Non compos mentis</td>
<td>A person who is not sufficiently sound of mind to manage his own affairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Nostrum</td>
<td>A quack remedy or a medicine the ingredients of which are kept secret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Nullipara</td>
<td>A woman who has not given birth to a child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Oculus dexter (OD, o. d.)</td>
<td>Right eye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Omnibus alternis horis (o. alt. hor.)</td>
<td>Every other hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Omni mane (o. m.)</td>
<td>Every morning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
53. Omni nocte (o. n.)  Every night
54. Per rectum (p. r.)  Per rectum (through the rectum)
55. Post meridiem (p. m.)  Evening or afternoon
56. Post mortem  After death
57. Post partum  After childbirth
58. Post prandium  After dinner
59. Potentia coeundi  The capacity to have sexual intercourse
60. Potentia concipiendi  The capacity to conceive
61. Potentia generandi  The power to beget children
62. Primigravida  One who is pregnant for the first time
63. Primipara  A woman who has had one child
64. Prognosis aneps  An uncertain prognosis
65. Prognosis fausta  A good prognosis
66. Prognosis infesta  An unfavorable prognosis
67. Prognosis quoad vitam  An opinion as to whether the patient will live
68. Pro ratiōne aetātis  According to age
   (p. r. aet.)
69. Pro re nata (p. r. n.)  Occasionally, when required
70. Pubertas plena  The attainment of full sexual maturity
71. Pubertas praecox  Puberty occurring at an abnormally early age
72. Quantum libet  As much as you please
   (=quantum placet)
73. Quaqua hora (q. q. h.)  Every hour
74. Quater in die (q. i. d.)  Four times a day
75. Secundigravida  A woman who is pregnant for the second time
76. Secundipara  A woman who has had 2 children, in two different
   pregnancies
77. Status asthmaticus  A severe and continuous attack of asthma in which there
   is marked dispnoea and finally exhaustion and collaps
78. Status convulsīvus sive  Repeated and prolonged epileptic seizures without
   epilepticus  recovery of consciousness between attacks
79. Status praesens  The present condition
80. Ter de die (t. d. d.)  Thrice a day
81. Unipara  A woman who has given birth once only
82. Vix conservātrix  The innate strength of an organism enabling it to
   withstand disease
83. Vix medicātrix natūrae  The natural ability of the organism to prevail over
   disease without external assistance
84. Vis vitae (vitālis)  The life force


CONTENTS

Preface ......................................................................................................................... 3
Introduction to the subject ............................................................................................ 4

Part I. PHONETIC RULES OF PRONUNCIATION .................................................. 7
Lesson 1. THE LATIN ALPHABET. THE PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS,
CONSONANTS AND LETTER COMBINATIONS ...................................................... 7
§ 1. Latin alphabet ........................................................................................................... 7
§ 2. Division of Latin sounds .......................................................................................... 8
§ 3. Pronunciation of vowels .......................................................................................... 8
§ 4. Pronunciation of two vowel combination ................................................................ 8
§ 5. Pronunciation of consonants .................................................................................... 9
§ 6. Pronunciation of consonant combinations ............................................................... 10
§ 7. Pronunciation of some letter combinations ............................................................. 11
§ 8. Exercises ................................................................................................................... 11
Lesson 2. ACCENT RULES ....................................................................................... 12
§ 9. Accent in the words consisting of two syllables ..................................................... 12
§ 10. Accent in polysyllabic words. Length and brevity of the second end syllable ....... 12
§ 11. Long suffixes ........................................................................................................ 13
§ 12. Short suffixes ......................................................................................................... 13
§ 13. Suffixes with similar quality of vowel in all parts of medical terminology .......... 14
§ 14. The way of accent determination when the second end vowel is not a part of a long or a short suffix .............................................................. 14
§ 15. Some rules of syllable length determination ....................................................... 14
§ 16. The rules of syllable brevity .................................................................................. 15
§ 17. Exercises .............................................................................................................. 15

Part II. ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY ............................................................... 17
Lesson 3. THE STRUCTURE OF LATIN ANATOMICAL TERMS.
NOUN AND ITS GRAMMAR CATEGORIES .......................................................... 17
§ 18. The Latin terminology in Anatomy and its structure ........................................... 17
§ 19. Grammar categories of noun ............................................................................... 18
§ 20. Dictionary form of nouns ..................................................................................... 18
§ 21. The stem of the noun and the way to determine it ................................................. 19
§ 22. Description of declensions ................................................................................. 19
§ 23. Exercises .............................................................................................................. 20
§ 24. Vocabulary to lesson 3 ........................................................................................ 21
Lesson 4. ADJECTIVES AND THEIR DICTIONARY FORM. ADJECTIVE
AND NOUN AGREEMENT ..................................................................................... 23
§ 25. Introductory information about adjectives in Latin .............................................. 23
§ 26. 1st group of adjectives ......................................................................................... 23
§ 27. 2nd group of adjectives ....................................................................................... 24
§ 28. Adjective and noun agreement .................................................................................. 25
§ 29. Exercises .................................................................................................................. 26
§ 30. Vocabulary to lesson 4 ............................................................................................. 27
Lesson 5. DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.
PECULIARITIES OF THE USE OF COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE DEGREES IN ANATOMICAL TERMS ....... 30
§ 31. Introductory remarks to the topic .............................................................................. 30
§ 32. The comparative degree ............................................................................................ 30
§ 33. Comparative forms in anatomical terminology ......................................................... 31
§ 34. The superlative degree .............................................................................................. 32
§ 35. Peculiarities of the use of the comparison degrees of the adjectives magnus, a, um and parvus, a, um in Latin anatomical terminology ......................................................... 32
§ 36. Exercises .................................................................................................................. 34
§ 37. Vocabulary to lesson 5 ............................................................................................. 35
Lesson 6. THE MASCULINE GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS. NAMES OF MUSCLES PERFORMING DIFFERENT FUNCTIONS ................................................. 37
§ 38. Masculine names in the third declension from the point of view of their endings in the Nominative and the Genitive ................................................................. 37
§ 39. Some explanations to the exceptions presented in the table .................................... 37
§ 40. Latin names of muscles performing different functions ........................................ 38
§ 41. Exercises .................................................................................................................. 39
§ 42. Vocabulary to lesson 6 ............................................................................................. 39
Lesson 7. FEMININE GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS .................................... 41
§ 43. Systematization of the feminine names in the third declension ............................... 41
§ 44. Exercises .................................................................................................................. 42
§ 45. Vocabulary to lesson 7 ............................................................................................. 42
Lesson 8. NEUTRAL GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS ..................................... 44
§ 46. Systematization of the neutral names of the third declension ................................ 44
§ 47. Some explanations on the nouns having similar endings but different gender and declension ................................................................. 45
§ 48. Exercises .................................................................................................................. 45
§ 49. Vocabulary to lesson 8 ............................................................................................. 46
Lesson 9. NOMINATIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES ............................................ 48
§ 50. Nominative plural endings of nouns and adjectives ................................................ 48
§ 51. Abbreviations of Nominative plural forms in anatomical terms .............................. 49
§ 52. Exercises .................................................................................................................. 49
§ 53. Vocabulary to lesson 9 ............................................................................................. 50
Lesson 10. GENITIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES ............................................... 51
§ 54. Genitive plural endings of nouns and adjectives ...................................................... 51
§ 55. Exercises .................................................................................................................. 53
Lesson 11. ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

Lesson 12. ABLATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE

Lesson 13. PREFIXES IN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

Lesson 14. INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

Lesson 15. LATIN IN THE MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION.

Part III. PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY
§ 81. The Conjunctive forms in medical prescription .................................................. 86
§ 82. The structure of a complex medical prescription .................................................. 86
§ 83. Some peculiarities of quantity expression in the medical prescription ................. 87
§ 84. Some important rules for making up the Latin part of medical prescription ............ 87
§ 85. Morphological roots of plant origin indicating alkaloids and glycosides with different pharmaceutical effects .................................................. 88
§ 86. Exercises .............................................................................................................. 88
§ 87. Vocabulary to lesson 15 ....................................................................................... 89
Lesson 16. THE USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE OF SOME PHARMACEUTICAL FORMS IN THE FIRST LINE OF A MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION ................. 91
§ 88. General information on the use of the Accusative of the pharmaceutical forms in a medical prescription .................................................. 91
§ 89. The prescription of tablets in the Accusative form ................................................. 92
§ 90. The prescription of drops in the Accusative form ................................................... 92
§ 91. The prescription of ophthalmic films ..................................................................... 93
§ 92. The prescription of medical sponges ..................................................................... 93
§ 93. The prescription of suppositories in the Accusative case ....................................... 94
§ 94. The prescription of aerosols in the Accusative case ................................................. 94
§ 95. Morphological roots ............................................................................................... 95
§ 96. Exercises .............................................................................................................. 95
§ 97. Vocabulary to lesson 16 ....................................................................................... 96
Lesson 17. LATIN NAMES OF CHEMICAL ELEMENTS, ACIDS, OXIDES, HYDROXIDES, PEROXIDES .................................................. 98
§ 98. Latin names of chemical elements ........................................................................ 98
§ 99. Latin names of acids ............................................................................................. 99
§ 100. Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides ....................................................... 100
§ 101. Morphological roots reflecting chemical information ......................................... 100
§ 102. Exercises ........................................................................................................... 101
§ 103. Vocabulary to lesson 17 .................................................................................... 102
Lesson 18. LATIN NAMES OF SALTS ON THE LABELS OF DRUG NAMES AND IN MEDICAL PRESCRIPTIONS ................................................. 105
§ 104. Latin names of salts, whose anions include oxygen ............................................. 105
§ 105. Latin names of salts, whose anions do not contain oxygen ................................... 105
§ 106. Anion names of basic salts ................................................................................... 106
§ 107. Two-component names of potassium and sodium salts ...................................... 106
§ 108. Morphological roots reflecting pharmaceutical information ................................ 106
§ 109. Exercises ........................................................................................................... 107
§ 110. Vocabulary to lesson 18 .................................................................................... 108
§ 111. Model (Pattern) of the final test in pharmaceutical terminology ......................... 111
Latin-english vocabulary ............................................................................................... 112
English-latin vocabulary ............................................................................................... 115
Part IV. CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY

Lesson 19. INTRODUCTION TO LATIN CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY. ONE-WORD TERMS AND THEIR MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURE. INITIAL AND FINAL MORPHOLOGICAL ELEMENTS USED FOR WORD BUILDING. NAMES OF BRANCHES OF MEDICINE AND MEDICAL SPECIALISTS. NAMES OF MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS

§ 112. General remarks on Latin clinical terminology

§ 113. The morphological structure of one-word clinical terms

§ 114. Some remarks on the word stressing in clinical names

§ 115. Initial and final root elements

§ 116. The names of the main branches of clinical medicine

§ 117. Names of medical specialists

§ 118. Some notes on the names of medical specialists in Latin and English

§ 119. The names of medical examinations and methods of treatment

§ 120. Table of initial root elements

§ 121. Table of final root elements

§ 122. Exercises

§ 123. Vocabulary to lesson 19

Lesson 20. ONE-WORD NAMES OF FUNCTION DISORDERS, PATHOLOGICAL PROCESSES AND ABNORMAL CONDITIONS

§ 124. One-word names of functional disorders

§ 125. One-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions

§ 126. Initial Greek roots and their Latin equivalents

§ 127. Table of final root elements

§ 128. Exercises

§ 129. Vocabulary to lesson 20

Lesson 21. NAMES OF QUALITATIVE AND QUANTITATIVE ABNORMALITIES IN MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURES AND PHYSIOLOGICAL PROCESSES

§ 130. Increase and decrease in different quantitative conditions

§ 131. Increase or decrease in dimension of anatomical and histological structures

§ 132. Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures

§ 133. Table of initial root elements

§ 134. Table of final roots

§ 135. Exercises

§ 136. Vocabulary to lesson 21

Lesson 22. NAMES OF INFLAMMATORY PROCESSES WHICH OCCUR IN ORGANS AND TISSUES. NAMES OF ABNORMALITIES IN THE STATES OF PHYSIOLOGICAL FLUIDS

§ 137. Names of inflammatory conditions

§ 138. Names of morbid conditions of physiological fluids

§ 139. Table of initial roots
Lesson 23. ONE-WORD NAMES OF ENDOGENOUS PATHOLOGICAL CHANGES AND MALFORMATIONS

Lesson 24. NAMES OF DEFORMATIONS OF TISSUE CAUSED BY EXOGENOUS FACTORS. NAMES OF SURGICAL OPERATIONS

Lesson 25. MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 1

Lesson 26. MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 2

Lesson 27. MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 3

Latin-english vocabulary
English-latin vocabulary
The international students’ anthem “Gaudeamus”
Latin proverbs and quotations
Medical professional impressions
Literature